

# Animal Movements and **Disease** Risk

A WORKBOOK, 4th EDITION





HENRY DOORLY ZOO



Audubon Park and **Zoological Gardens** 

Department of Conservation Te Papa Atawhai











AUCKLAND ZOO

UNOVARTIS

VF







# ANIMAL MOVEMENTS AND DISEASE RISK

### A WORKBOOK

### 4th Edition

### **South Africa**

### 18-21 November 2002

Workshop Sponsors: Novartis Animal Health South African Veterinary Foundation U.S. Embassy in Pretoria South African National Parks National Zoological Gardens of South Africa Endangered Wildlife Trust Cheetah Conservation Foundation

In Kind Instructor Support: Conservation Breeding Specialist Group, Africam Safari, University of Maryland School of Medicine, Lincoln Park Zoological Gardens and Henry Doorly Zoo

> Workbook Printing Sponsored by: Lincoln Park Zoological Gardens

#### Workbook Organized by: Omaha's Henry Doorly Zoo Conservation Breeding Specialist Group/SSC/IUCN Veterinary Specialist Group/SSC/IUCN

In collaboration with: New Zealand Department of Conservation Auckland Zoo Lincoln Park Zoological Gardens Brookfield Zoo

This workbook was developed in part due to the visionary and generous direct contributions of the following institutions:

American Association of Zoo Veterinarians

Audubon Park and Zoological Garden

Lincoln Park Zoological Gardens

Omaha's Henry Doorly Zoo

San Diego Zoo

White Oak Conservation Center and the Gilman Foundation

Wildlife Conservation Society

The Conservation Breeding Specialist Group wishes to extend their appreciation to these institutions for their support.

A special thanks to Ventana Systems for permitting access to and use of their Vensim software for this project.

VENTANA

Vensim<sup>®</sup> from Ventana Systems, Inc.

A contribution of the IUCN/SSC Conservation Breeding Specialist Group.

#### © Copyright 2002 CBSG.

Armstrong, D., R. Jakob-Hoff, and U. S. Seal (editors). 2002. Conservation Breeding Specialist Group (SSC/IUCN). 2001. Animal Movements and Disease Risk: A Workbook. CBSG, Apple Valley, MN.

Additional copies of Animal Movements and Disease Risk: A Workbook. 2002. can be ordered through the IUCN/SSC Conservation Breeding Specialist Group, 12101 Johnny Cake Ridge Road, Apple Valley, MN 55124. email:office@cbsg.org. web:www.cbsg.org

# ANIMAL MOVEMENTS AND DISEASE RISK:

### A WORKBOOK

### **CONTENTS**

**Acknowledgement and Contributors** Introduction **Disease List and Project Diagram Hazard Identification Decision Analysis Protocols** System Modeling- Stella and Vensim Health Assessment Worksheet for Animal Movements **Test Considerations Appendix to the Worksheet** Sample Collection Appendix to the Worksheet Modelling of Population and Disease Dynamics: OUTBREAK and VORTEX **Decision analysis Modeling Software and Examples Cost Analysis Spread Sheet- Examples Mapping- Maps and GIS IUCN Policies and Guidelines References** 

#### Acknowledgement

This workbook has been developed through the effort of a significant number of supporters and people active in conservation activities throughout the world. The people donated their time, their resources and most importantly their thoughts and ideas to this project. The Conservation Breeding Specialist Group (CBSG) initiated a series of workshops in 1991 at the National Zoo in Washington, DC intended to reach this product. The workshop series progressed through a large one in Oakland in 1992 prior to the American Association of Zoo Veterinarians meeting there and more recently through smaller workshops at Pretoria and at Cincinnati in 1999. In 2000 a concerted effort was made to synthesize the concepts and ideas that had been accumulated in the previous workshops into a working tool for broad distribution to conservation programs around the world. This final series of three intensive workshops began at Omaha in March of 2000 and then went to New Orleans in September of 2000. The series concluded with a workshop at White Oak Plantation in June of 2001. These workshops and the completion of this workbook is attributable to both the participants who worked diligently throughout the workshops, their employers who gave them the opportunity to participate and to the institutions that provided direct financial support for these final three workshops. The supporting institutions include the American Association of Zoo Veterinarians, Audubon Park and Zoological Garden, the Henry Doorly Zoo, the Lincoln Park Zoological Gardens, the San Diego Zoo, White Oak Conservation Center and the Wildlife Conservation Society. The tireless participants are listed below. Many of these people worked in more than one of the workshops to produce this product. We would like to extend our sincere thanks to the sponsors and the participants of the final three workshops, as well as the many others who contributed their expertise and support through the entire history of this project.

Last Name	First Name	Affiliation
Aguirre	Alonso	Wildlife Trust
-		Consortium for Conservation Medicine
		61 Route 9W
		Palisades, NY 10964-8000
Alexander	Shelley	Department of Geography
	-	University of Calgary
		Calgary, Alberta T2N 1N4 Canada
Allchurch	Tony	Director of Veterinary Services
	-	Durrell Wildlife Conservation Trust
		Les Augres Manor, Trinity
		Jersey, Great Britain
Armstrong	Doug	Henry Doorly Zoo
_	_	3701 S. 10 <sup>th</sup>
		Omaha, NE 68107
Atkinson	Mark	Director of Animal Health
		The Wilds
		14000 International Road
		Cumberland, Ohio 43732
Ballou	Jon	National Zoological Park
		3001 Connecticut Avenue
		Washington DC 20008
Barrie	Mike	Columbus Zoological Gardens

		PO Box 400
		Powell, OH 43065-0400
Boardman	Wayne	Jane Goodall Institute
		PO Box 369
		Entebbe, Uganda
Bright	Patti	VA-MD Regional College of Veterinary Medicine
		University of Maryland campus- Epidemiology
		7775 Waller Dr.
		Manassas, VA 20111
Brown	Sue	VA-MD Regional College of Veterinary Medicine
		7402 Salford Court
		Alexandria, VA 22315
Bush	Mitch	Smithsonian Conservation and Research Center
		1500 Remount Road
		Front Royal, VA 22630
Catao-Dias	Jose	Department of Pathology
		FMVZ- University of Sao Paulo
		Sao Paulo, SP Brazil 05508-000
Citino	Scott	Staff Veterinarian
		White Oak Conservation Center
		White Oak Plantation
		3823 Owens, Road
		Yulee, FL 32097-2145
Cook	Robert	Wildlife Conservation Society
		2300 South Boulevard
		Bronx, NY 10460
Corn	Joe	Southeastern Cooperative Wildlife Disease Study
		College of Veterinary Medicine
		University of Georgia
~		Athens, GA 30602
Corso	Barbara	USDA, APHIS, VS, CEAH
		555 S. Howes St.
<u> </u>		Fort Collins, CO 80521
Cranfield	Mike	Head Veterinarian
		Project Director Mountain Gorilla Veterinary Project
		Baltimore Zoo
		Druidhill Park
	T	Baltimore, MD 21217
Curro	Tom	Henry Doorly Zoo
		3/01 S. 10 St.
D	01	Omana, NE 6810/
Deem	Snaron	Field Veterinary Program
		2300 Southern Blvd.
Dain	T- 1	BIONX, NY 10404
Dein	Josh	National Wildlife Health Center
		Biological Resources Division-USGS

		6006 Schroeder Rd.
		Madison, WI 53711
Dumonceaux	Genny	Busch Gardens, Tampa
	2	PO Box 9158
		Tampa, FL 33674
Ellis	Susie	Conservation Breeding Specialist Group
		12101 Johnny Cake Ridge Road
		Apple Valley, MN 55124
Else	Jim	Center for Conservation Medicine
		School of Veterinary Medicine
		Tufts University
		200 Westboro Road
		North Grafton, MA 01536
Evermann	James	Washington Animal Disease Diagnostic Laboratory
		College of Veterinary Medicine
		Washington State University
		Pullman, WA 99164-7034
Flanagan	Joe	Houston Zoo Animal Hospital Houston Zoological Garden
		1513 North MacGregor
		Houston, TX 77030
Gillin	Colin	Tufts University Center for Conservation Medicine
		Rocky Mountain Office
		PO Box 1330
		Wilson, WY 83014
Haigh	Jerry	Department of Herd Medicine and Theriogenology
		Western College of Veterinary Medicine
		52 Campus Drive
		Saskatoon, Saskatchewan S7N 5B4
		Canada
Hungerford	Laura	Great Plains Veterinary Educational Center
		University of Nebraska
		PO Box 148
		Clay Center, NE 68933
Jakob-Hoff	Richard	Wildlife Health and Research Center Auckland Zoological
		Park
		Private Bag
		Grey Lynn, Auckland
T		New Zealand
Janssen	Don	San Diego Zoo
		PO Box 120551
т		San Diego, CA 92112
Jessup	Dave	Lationia Dept. Fish and Game
		1451 Shaffer Koad
Labrager	Mort	Santa Cruz, CA 95060
Jonnson	матк	Wildlife Veterinary Kesources
		PO Box 10248
		Bozeman, MT 59/19-0248

Junge	Randy	St. Louis Zoo		
e	5	1 government Drive		
		St. Louis, Mo 63110		
Kennedy-	Suzanne	NCSU Pylon Research Laboratories		
Stoskopf		617 Hutton Street		
F-		Raleigh, NC 27606		
Klein	Patty	Humane Society of the United States		
		Wildlife and Habitat Protection		
		2100 L Street NW		
		Washington, DC 20037		
Kreeger	Terry	Wyoming Game and Fish Center		
		2362 Hwy 34		
		Wheatland, WY 82201		
Lacy	Bob	Chicago Zoological Society		
2009	200	Brookfield Zoo		
		Brookfield IL 60513		
Lamberski	Nadine	Riverbanks Zoo and Garden		
24110 410111		Box 1060		
		Columbia SC 29202-1060		
Langenberg	Julie	Wisconsin Department of Natural Resources		
Langeneerg	0 uno	101 S. Webster St. Box 7921		
		Madison, WI 53707-7921		
Leandro	Danillo	Simon Bolivar National Zoo		
	2	FUNDAZOO		
		Apdo 11594-1000		
		San Jose, Costa Rica		
Llizo	Shirley	Houston Zoo		
		1513 N. MacGregor Way		
		Houston, TX 77030		
Loskutoff	Naida	Henry Doorly Zoo		
		3701 S. 10 <sup>th</sup> St.		
		Omaha, NE 68107		
Lowenstine	Linda	Department of Pathology- UCD		
		School of Veterinary Medicine		
		University of California		
		Davis, CA 95616		
Meehan	Tom	Brookfield Zoo		
		3300 Golf Rd.		
		Brookfield, IL 60513		
Mehren	Kay	Toronto Zoo		
		361 Old Finch Ave.		
		Scarborough		
		Ontario, M1B 5K7 Canada		
Miller	Phil	Conservation Breeding Specialist Group		
		12101 Johnny Cake Ridge Road		
		Apple Valley, MN 55124-8151		
Montali	Richard	Department of Pathology		

		National Zoological Park,
		Washington, DC 20008
Mudakikwa	Tony	Mountain Gorilla Veterinary Project
		BP1321
		Kigali, Rwanda, Central Africa
Mudrak	Vincent	USFWS Warm Springs Regional Fisheries Center
		5308 Spring street
		Warm Springs, GA 31830
Munson	Linda	Dept. Pathology, Microbiology and Immunology
		School of Veterinary Medicine
		University of California
		1126 Haring Hall/One Shields Ave.
		Davis, CA 95616
Nizeye	John Bosco	Mountain Gorilla Veterinary Project
		Department of WARM
		Makerb University
		PO Box 7069
		Kampala, Uganda
Norton	Terry	St. Catherine's Island Wildlife Survival Center
		182 Camellia Rd.
		Midway, GA 31320
Nutter	Felicia	Environmental Medicine Consortium
		Department of Clinical Sciences
		North Carolina State University
		4700 Hillsborough St.
		Raleigh, NC 27606
Pappaioanou	Marguerite	Centers for Disease Control
		Mail Stop K-01
		4770 Buford Highway, NE
		Atlanta, GA 30341-3724
Paquet	Paul	Box 150
		Meacham, SK 50K 2VO
Paras Garcia	Alberto	Africam Safari
		11 Oriente 2407
		Puebla Pue. 72007
<b>D</b> .	4.11	Mexico
Pessier	Allan	U of I Zoological Pathology Program
		Loyola University Medical Center
		Room 0/45, Building 101
		2160 First Ave
		Maywood, IL 60153
Porter	Warren	Department of Zoology
1 01101		University of Wisconsin
		250 N Mills St
		Madison WI 53706
Proudfoot	leffry	Indiananolis Zoo
110001001	JUIIIY	

		1200 W. Washington St.	
		Indianapolis, IN 46222	
Radcliffe	Robin	Fossil Rim Wildlife Center	
		2155 County Road 2008	
		Glen Rose, TX 76043	
Rideout	Bruce	Center for Reproduction of Endangered Species	
		San Diego Zoo, Box 120551	
		San Diego, CA 92112	
Sanderson	Stephanie	North of England Zoological Society	
	1	Chester Zoo	
		Upton, Chester CH2 1CH, UK	
Seal	Ulysses	Conservation Breeding Specialist Group	
	2	12101 Johnny Cake Ridge Road	
		Apple Valley, MN 55124-8151	
Simmons	Heather	Henry Doorly Zoo	
		3701 S. 10 <sup>th</sup> St., Omaha, NE 68107	
Simmons	Lee	Henry Doorly Zoo	
		3701 S. 10 <sup>th</sup> , Omaha, NE 68107	
Sobel	Annette	New Mexico Air National Guard	
Thiyagarajah	Arunthavarani	Department of Environmental Sciences	
		School of Public Health and Tropical Medicine	
		Tulane University Medical Center	
		1430 Tulane Avenue	
		New Orleans, LA 70112	
Travis	Dominic	Veterinary Epidemiologist	
		Lincoln Park Zoo	
		2001 N. Clark St., Chicago, IL 60617	
Van Bonn	William	US Navy Marine Mammal Program	
		53560 Hull Street	
		Code D 352 (PL-BS)	
		San Diego, CA 92152-5000	
Wildt	David	Conservation and Research Center	
		1500 Remount Road, Front Royal, VA 22630	
Williams	Beth	Wyoming State Veterinary Laboratory	
		1174 Snowy Range Road	
		Laramie, WY 82070	
Woodford	Mike	Veterinary Specialist Group (now retired)	
Ziccardi	Michael	Wildlife Health Center	
		School of Veterinary Medicine	
		University of California, Davis, Davis, CA 95616	

# ANIMAL MOVEMENTS AND DISEASE RISK

A WORKBOOK

4th Edition

South Africa

18-21 November 2002

**INTRODUCTION** 

### Introduction

The workbook and the tools contained within are designed to provide a framework for a wide range of individuals with many different kinds of experience and expertise to think about and address the issue of disease and how it relates to wildlife populations and animal translocation projects. These tools are not designed to provide statistically valid, mathematically defensible answers to scientific questions. They are designed to enable professionals involved in day to day decision making about wildlife management to better equip themselves to make reasonable decisions to benefit wildlife and its conservation. The tools go through several concurrent evolutions as they develop. They begin on a very fundamental level with regard to disease and risk analysis and they progress in complexity and mathematical rigor. They also begin on a very basic level with regard to the technology required to use them, initially pencil and paper, and progress to more complex software programs that require the use of a computer and some significant training to apply. Most importantly perhaps, the tools begin on a very intuitive level of assessment and progress through a series of transitions to a more qualitative assessment and finally to very quantitative methods of assessment. The tools are designed to be flexible and modifiable according to each situation, to enable professionals to incorporate not only published, statistically valid data but also to be able to make reasonable decisions when there is no data available and to capture valuable information available from field or clinical experience.

### **Conceptual Development**

The health of endangered species, both in the wild and in captivity, could be seriously impacted by common and emerging pathogens. Animal health experts, conservation biologists, regulatory and trade officials, and natural resource agencies are all faced with implementing risk management strategies in the face of relatively little existing information. Risk analysis is a growing field concentrated on accumulating and organizing existing information in order to prioritize relative risks to support decision-making in the face of uncertainty.

Disease is increasingly recognized as a significant risk factor in conservation programs involving animal movements such as reintroduction or translocation. Disease risk poses threats not only to the species on which programs are focused but also to other species that share the habitat. The concern over disease processes and their impact extends across diverse areas of interest including the fields of conservation biology, wild and zoo conservation management and veterinary medicine as well as to agricultural medicine and human medical fields. However disease risk has proven to be complex and difficult to assess and quantify in the context of a conservation program. The growing recognition that disease issues can profoundly effect the viability of populations and consequently the success or failure of conservation programs has led to diverse efforts by individuals and groups to develop some rational means to 1) assess the risks that disease poses to these programs, 2) develop well reasoned understandings of the factors and issues involved and 3) make reasonable decisions based on these assessments.

The philosophy of zero risk has posed an unattainable goal for needed animal movement actions in wildlife conservation programs. The need for a comprehensive, unified, and broadly applicable set of tools was agreed by all of the participants in both year 2000 workshops in their stated individual goals for the workshop and was more completely described during the workshops in terms of disease biology, data analysis and decision making tools, and communicating risk analysis information for action.

### **RISK CONCERNS FOR MOVEMENT OF ANIMALS**

#### March 31, 2000 Omaha, Nebraska

#### PREAMBLE

Risk concerns in moving animals for conservation or wildlife management includes three groups of primary disease issues. This analysis is based upon the recognition that a zero risk tolerance philosophy does not meet the needs for decision making in conservation programs. However, there is not a comprehensive agreed, unified, broadly applicable set of tools such as protocols, models, policies or guidelines to assist assessment of disease risk associated with needed animal movement decisions.

#### I. DISEASE BIOLOGY

# **1.** Multiple biological issues in addition to disease complicate the analysis of risks associated with moving animals.

Issues may include:

- a) Impact on social structure of resident population and ecosystem,
- b) Habitat carrying capacity, interspecies completion's?? competition
- c) Other factors that need to be identified for the individual situation.

# 2. The impact of diseases on our ability to implement conservation actions is poorly understood.

Issues may include:

- a) Impact of disease on successful outcome of animal movement is not appreciated.
- b) Effects of diseases on population dynamics and population viability, on natural life history of the focus species, and on the species community,
- c) Human health impacts.
- d) Need to focus on populations rather than the individual animal.
- e) Management actions during movements may increase the concentration of pathogens in the population being moved.
- f) Public perceptions and politics.
- g) Treatment may induce problems or disease or be ineffective.

**3.** Information on the epidemiology (e.g. dynamics of intra- and interspecific transfer) and pathogenesis (e.g. susceptibility, development of immunity) of diseases is frequently limited. Issues may include:

- a) Captive "closed" settings to "open" natural habitats
- b) Infectious vs. non-infectious disease (need to consider the source and destination populations)
- c) Clinical vs. pathologic aspects
- d) Prevalence and incidence
- e) Impact of land management practices that may promote disease transmission
- f) Morbidity, mortality, case fatality

# **4.** Information on the status of disease in source and destination populations is limited. Issues may include:

- a) What diseases exist that can affect an animal?
- b) Which of those might be introduced in a translocation or reintroduction?
- c) What are the consequences of moving those diseases to other species being discussed, e.g., what might spread to domestic species and other wildlife?
- d) What reverse risk diseases are present in the area that might affect the species in question?

# 5. Diagnostic tests often are not, or can not be, used prior to transfer of animals, which may pose a serious threat to the viability of populations. Without test results there will be a failure to treat, vaccinate, or reject the moved animals.

Issues may include:

- a) Appropriate diagnostic tests and standards for many different diseases and species are not available.
- b) Consistent surveillance/temporal sampling for diseases over time is not done.
- c) Knowledge needed for correct interpretation of diagnostic tests is not available: e.g., detection may be evidence of infection but does not indicate presence of disease. Vaccination may complicate interpretation.
- d) Knowledge of sensitivity and specificity of test not available, making interpretation difficult.
- e) Experimental controls or adequate sample sizes to obtain needed data are not available.
- f) Non-invasive testing methods are not available.
- g) Access to quality laboratories to conduct diagnostic testing is not available.

#### II. DATA ANALYSIS / DECISION MAKING TOOLS

# 1. Integrated tools to assist risk identification, characterization, assessment and management decision- making are not readily available.

#### Selection of analysis and decision assistance tools needs to consider:

- a) International availability and accessibility.
- b) Flexible, dynamic and layperson friendly format.
- c) Use existing tools where possible (i.e., do not "reinvent the wheel" with existing tools).
- d) Incorporation and assessment of cost: benefit of doing translocation, reintroduction, release, repatriation, restocking, transfer and rehabilitation in the context of global wildlife conservation and biodiversity.
- e) Development of acceptable risks within the context of limited resources.
- f) Incorporation of knowledge to set priorities (i.e., in order to address threats so that we know how much energy to put into disease assessment).
- g) Is the analysis directed at a particular species, disease or ecosystem?

# 2. Appropriate data to apply to the selected tools are often limited or are not easily accessible.

#### Selection of data to include in analysis tools needs to consider:

- a) Use of consistent terminology.
- **b)** Access to available data for the international community.
- c) The establishment of centralized databases.

# 3. Target users and interpreters of the tools and the information produced need to be a part of the process of development of the tools.

#### Selection of the target users needs to consider including:

- a) Multidisciplinary professional team including biologists, veterinarians, behaviorists, geneticists, toxicologists, epidemiologists, infectious disease specialists.
- **b)** Multidisciplinary animal management team (including veterinarians, wildlife managers,
- c) Policy makers (politicians, sociologist, public, special interest groups, activists).

#### III. COMMUNICATING RISK ANALYSIS INFORMATION FOR ACTION

#### Introduction

Wildlife and zoo managers and policymakers need essential and valid information to make informed decisions. Communicating the conservation value of information to decision makers in an understandable and compelling way is essential for this process of using risk assessment information to be a part of the decision making process. Some of the problems to solve for achieving a successful communication strategy were identified.

1. It is difficult to get managers and decision makers to agree on an acceptable level of risk.

What information and communication process needs to be considered, e.g., what role do diseases play in wild populations?

- 2. Access to applicable data and the results of analyses, especially information from international sources and those on the Internet is difficult.
- 3. Communication between risk assessment specialists (modelers) and those with data on disease in populations is needed.
- 4. Disease risk data are not considered by decision-makers and stakeholders because the data are not communicated in a user-friendly way to facilitate action.
- 5. Effective methods and mechanisms for dissemination and communication of information to stakeholders on disease characteristics and associated risks are not used.
- 6. People are unaware of existing tools (data, models, protocols, etc.) and how they could be used to identify and minimize disease risks.

It is difficult even with this knowledge and understanding to get people to use the tools.

- 7. Science-based policy and management decision-making are hampered in geopoliticallypressured environments.
- 8. There needs to be general agreement that acceptable risk results in higher probability of negative movement events that a zero risk strategy.

### Scope and Magnitude of Disease in Species Conservation

Linda Munson, Dept Veterinary Pathology, Microbiology and Immunology, University of California, Davis, CA 95616

Most diseases impacting animal conservation are infectious in origin, although genetic and toxic diseases also influence population viability. Infectious diseases have caused significant losses across all taxa, but several notable catastrophic epidemics have occurred in endangered wild carnivore populations.

The canine distemper virus epidemic in the Serengeti ecosystem resulted in the loss of approximately one third of the principal large predators (lions and hyenas) and uncounted numbers of other carnivores. The rapid spread and extensive impact of this virus in species that previously were not affected by CDV was the culmination of altered viral virulence and ecological factors, such as the high density of lions, their congregation in prides, and interactions with hyenas at kill sites. Canine distemper also was responsible for near extinction of the black footed ferret in the US and recently has extirpated the Channel Island fox population on the eastern half of Santa Catalina Island.

Several African wild dog populations throughout Africa have been extirpated by epidemics of rabies and CDV. The northern Serengeti population in the Masai Mara disappeared in 1989 because of a rabies epidemic, and southern Serengeti populations disappeared in the early 1990s from a disease epidemic of unknown etiology. Populations in Botswana and South Africa also have been recently extirpated by rabies and CDV. Although the wild dog may appear uniquely predisposed to fatalities from infectious disease, it is more likely that their complex social interactions facilitates viral transmission and enhances traumatic fatalities from aggression. Regardless, infectious diseases clearly impede efforts to conserve small populations of carnivores in close proximity to human habitation where the persistence of rabies and CDV in domestic dog populations constitutes a recurrent threat.

Canine distemper also has affected endangered carnivores in captivity, and the scarcity of safe, efficacious CDV vaccines has hampered preventive medicine programs. In captivity these populations are at even greater risk because infectious agents are more concentrated and genetic diversity is often more restricted than are wild populations. Captive stress confounds these other risks by modulating the immune response to infectious agents.

The scope and magnitude of infectious disease epidemics in carnivores are greatly influenced by behavior and ecology. Large carnivore populations are small and fragmented because of habitat restrictions imposed by human conflicts. This habitat fragmentation limits emigration and immigration, leading to progressively reduced genetic diversity which has the potential to increase susceptibility to disease. Breeding behavior in many large carnivores (e.g. alpha animals) further restricts genetic diversity. Because large carnivores are at the top of food chain, they can receive concentrated doses of infectious agents through their prey, for example lions acquiring *Mycobacteria* from Cape buffalo in South Africa or cheetahs acquiring anthrax from infected meat. Also, the sequestering of their young in dens results in exposures to high concentrations of pathogens at a susceptible age. Infectious agents can also be concentrated and transmitted at sites of territory marking. Furthermore, conspecific social behavior and

interspecific competition with other predators at kill sites facilitates infectious disease transmission. Taken together, these features enhance the impact of disease on carnivore populations and need to be considered when assessing the risk of disease.

The prototype species in which diseases have hampered conservation efforts is the cheetah. Results of more than ten years of pathology surveillance of both wild and captive populations have disclosed high prevalences of unusual degenerative diseases (leukoencephalopathy, veno-occlusive disease and glomerulosclerosis) of unknown etiology, as well as unusually severe or persistent forms of infectious diseases (e.g. *Helicobacter* gastritis, feline herpes virus, feline corona virus, canine parvovirus, anthrax). They also appear more predisposed to cryptococcosis and notoedric mange than other felids. Their response to many common infectious agents is characterized by a florid, inappropriate immune response leading to immune-mediated disease or a failure to clear intracellular agents leading to persistent infection. These responses are features of an immune response modulated by cortisol (Th1 to Th2 shift), a hypothesis supported by evidence that captive cheetahs have four-fold higher levels of cortisol than wild cheetahs. Their reduced genetic diversity also may be a contributing factor to their predisposition to develop diseases.

Because of this propensity to develop diseases, conservation efforts for cheetahs have been hampered. Deaths of genetically valuable animals have prevented implementation of the SSP Master Plan. Concerns that moving cheetahs among zoos will expose them to new biotypes of pathogens, as well as increase stress has also impeded captive conservation efforts. The concerns have validity because deaths from veno-occlusive disease and feline infectious peritonitis have followed movement of cheetahs between facilities, suggesting some link between these events. In wild populations, translocations increase exposure to anthrax or notoedric mange as well as potentially causing stress-induced immunodysfunction. Also, translocated cheetahs can introduce infectious agents, such as feline leukemia virus or feline coronavirus, to cheetahs in the recipient environment. These risks, however real or hypothetical, are better managed then ignored and should not hold hostage efforts to conserve these populations.

Assessing the risk of disease in animal conservation requires knowledge of species responses to important pathogens, as well as an understanding of disease pathogenesis and predisposing factors. No population can be free of disease, but minimizing diseases that cause catastrophic losses, impede reproduction or target genetic founders is a reasonable goal. Also, diseases that are an outcome of conservation strategies (e.g. injury or hyperthermia from translocation or exposure to toxic or infectious agents during translocation) can be reduced if identified.

An important aspect of assessing the disease risk to a species is distinguishing whether a species actually has a disease or simply harbors or has been exposed to potentially infectious agents. Many "disease surveys" have been simply surveys of antibody titers which have no direct link to morbidity or mortality effects. Pathology, as a translational science, continues to be the most reliable means to determine if disease is an outcome of exposure. As new technologies enhance our abilities to detect toxins and infectious agents, this linkage of agent with disease condition will become more critical. Otherwise all programs will be paralyzed by information without context. Because experimental reproduction of disease is not possible in most wild animals, the "Koch's postulate of pathologists", which is identifying the pathogen (or toxin)

within an appropriate lesion, becomes most useful. Applying this criteria should minimize inappropriate concern for organisms that are minimally pathogenic or part of a species normal flora.

Transmission or exacerbation of disease through conservation strategies is a valid concern, but these concerns should not thwart conservation programs. Reasonable policies can be designed through predictive models that can be applicable to situations with limited hard data. Such risk assessment models could be invaluable for identifying high risk actions, thereby providing a more objective method for making informed decisions about animal translocations. Alongside the development and application of these tools, however, should be an equal commitment to acquire as much new information as possible on diseases in the populations of concern

# **Richard Jakob-Hoff B.V.M.S., Veterinarian, Auckland Zoological Park, Auckland, New Zealand**

I want to begin by noting some of the disease and translocation issues of particular importance to Australasia.

#### Disease Issues

- The long geographic isolation of the continent combined with very stringent border controls have ensured that several diseases of major importance elsewhere have not yet gained a foothold in Australasia. These include such major causes of mortality and/or debility as Foot and Mouth Disease, Rabies, Avian Influenza and Newcastle Disease Virus (although there has been a recent outbreak of NDV in poultry in Eastern Australia)
- Within NZ and, to a lesser extent Australia, there are large numbers of off-shore islands which are being strategically used to isolate threatened native animal populations from endangering factors such as introduced predators.
- Many wildlife populations in both countries are fragmented even within the main land mass resulting in ecologically isolated meta-populations.
- While many diseases are known to be harbored by wildlife there is very little documented data on the impact of these diseases on the wildlife populations themselves (there are a few exceptions such as Chlamydiosis in koalas whose impact on fertility and mortality has been extensively studied)
- Mass die-offs due to infectious diseases are not a feature in this region (discounting those that are part of natural ecological cycles such as the annual die-off of all adult male dunnarts, *Sminthopsis stuartii*).
- Possibly as a consequence of the lack of overt visibility of wildlife mortalities there is currently no focused effort to determine wildlife health profiles (i.e. disease distribution and prevalence) for specific species, populations or ecological communities.

#### **Translocation Issues**

- Translocation of threatened species as part of species recovery strategies are common and increasing, particularly wild to wild and captive to wild translocations. However, recognition of associated disease risks is only emerging at this time and pre-shipment quarantine and health screening is not standard practice and funds for this are not generally budgeted.
- There are a small but growing number of veterinarians with wildlife expertise but virtually none are employed by wildlife agencies.
- Vets are also not routinely included in species recovery groups.

In general, wildlife managers see disease threats as very minor compared to many of the more obvious endangering forces such as the impact of introduced predators and competitors, habitat loss, pollution, fires etc. Their experience with these more overt problems make them reluctant to divert their limited resources to disease detection and surveillance – a Catch 22 given that if you don't look you won't find. At Auckland Zoo, where we look a lot, we are finding infectious agents not previously described in some threatened native species (e.g. avian malaria and avian pox in NZ dotterels, *Charadrius obscurus* and avian babesiosis in North Island brown kiwi, *Apteryx australis mantelli*). In surveillance of free-living populations we are finding organisms previously only described in captive animals (e.g. coccidia in NI brown kiwi). These findings are raising the awareness of disease issues within both zoo and DOC communities and barriers to proactive action are beginning to fade.

#### **Predicting Populations at Risk for Mortality Events**

Suzanne Kennedy-Stoskopf, D.V.M., Ph.D.

Mass mortality events capture the attention of the media and public. In aquatic ecosystems, whether it is marine mammals washed up on beaches or fish floating in rivers, people want an immediate, straightforward explanation of cause. In a rush to provide simple answers to what are usually complex questions, multi-factorial events are often overlooked or worse still ignored. The role of Pfiesteria in menhaden mortalities during the 1990's in North Carolina estuarine rivers and Chesapeake Bay tributaries remains controversial. This toxic dinoflagellate, dubbed the "cell from hell" by the media, does not cause the characteristic deep ulcerations around the anal pore and tail stalk, raising the issue of whether *Pfiesteria* contributes to the mortality events or merely serves as a bio-marker for other conditions which cause muscle necrosis and death. The ulcers appear to form from the inside out as deep muscle necrosis which can be seen in the absence of ulcerations. Certain fungi have been described previously as associated with these ulcers and inoculation of Aphanomyces invadens can reproduce the lesions. Recently, Kudoa, a myxosporean parasite that causes post-mortem acceleration of muscle degeneration referred to as "soft flesh," has been implicated. None of these suggested etiologies explain the predominant localization of lesions distally. One possible hypothesis to explain this observation is that fish experience transient anoxic events and shunt blood to perfuse vital organs. Reperfusion of the ischemic muscle tissue causes oxidative stresses that trigger inflammatory reactions and subsequent deep muscle necrosis. Clearly, there is not a simple explanation to account for the recent fish mortalities in mid-Atlantic estuarine rivers.

Before mass mortality events can be placed in context, it is helpful to know the health status of the impacted population. The unusually high prevalence of ulcerative skin lesions in fishes from Chesapeake Bay tributaries and two menhaden kills in the Pocomoke River during the summer and fall of 1997 prompted the U.S. Geological Survey's National Fish Health Laboratory (Kearneysville, WV) and the Maryland Department of Natural Resources (Stevensville, MD) to conduct a broad-base study of fish health. One facet of this study assessed immune function in white perch (Morone americana) using a traditional functional assay and comparing it to a molecular technique to determine if newer technology could be adapted to evaluate immunosuppression within a population. A PCR-based technology has been developed to measure expression of the cytokine, transforming growth factor-beta (TGF-GL), in a wide variety of teleost fish. Enhanced expression of TGF-& correlates with a variety of suppressed immune functions in higher vertebrate species. Immunomodulation studies demonstrated that TGF-GS expression correlates inversely with macrophage bactericidal activity in fish. Results from fish collected in the Chesapeake Bay tributaries showed the same inverse correlation. Enhanced TGF-62 expression and decreased macrophage killing occurred in certain rivers in August and October compared to June. Although there were no fish mortalities, menhaden with characteristic ulcerative myositis were observed in August and October. Identification of underlying, predisposing factors remain to be elucidated but the study is currently ongoing. The importance of the findings to date is verification of new technology to evaluate immune function within a population that is potentially more user-friendly in field applications. This technology can be adapted to other immunoregulatory proteins to provide much needed tools to assess whether populations are at risk for mortality events before they occur.

# ANIMAL MOVEMENTS AND DISEASE RISK

A WORKBOOK

4th Edition

**South Africa** 

18-21 November 2002

DISEASE LIST AND PROJECT DIAGRAM

### **Disease List and Project Diagram**

Make a list of diseases that may be significant in your project, or all diseases you are aware of that effect any species involved in the project, or the species being translocated. Ask yourself these questions about each disease.First Exercise

- 1. Fill out a project description using the form provided or creating your own format. This will be the basis on which you will build in the use of the remaining tools in this workbook. (Translocation and Release form at the end of this section)
- 2. Make a pencil and paper diagram of the steps of the project. Keep the diagram as simple as possible for now and include key steps.

#### Example

In order to give you an idea of the objective, a simple hypothetical release program for reintroducing Siberian tigers from zoos back into the wild is illustrated below.

Captive tigers- multiple zoos in North America and Europe	$\rightarrow$	Individual crates by truck to multiple airports	$\rightarrow$	Individual crates by multiple airplanes to Vladivostock	$\rightarrow$	Central training facility in Khabarovsk, individual caging
						$\downarrow$
		Individual animal soft release enclosure at each site	<b>←</b>	Truck in individual crate to multiple release sites, 1 animal per site	~	One year training program, moving between small individual enclosures and large training enclosure

# 3. Make a list of diseases that occur in the species being moved or in any related wild or domestic species in the release area.

Rank the diseases according to what you feel is their relative importance, list the reasons you think that. Record the basis for your ranking, Why do you think it should be ranked where it is. If field data, note that, if from an article note that, if the basis is from your impression, note that, record hard data when you have it.

(If ranking becomes difficult see the Paired Ranking exercise on the next page)

#### Review the following questions with regarding each disease listed.

Do you intuitively feel that this disease is important for the animals to be moved or for animals where they are to be moved to? Which diseases do you need to think about more? Which do you need to get more information about? Maybe you need to do nothing more.

#### **Paired Ranking**

This is a means of producing a ranked list when it proves difficult to sort listed items into a priority list. It may be useful for an individual or a working group if the disease list is difficult to prioritize. The mechanism for carrying this technique out is very simple. As an example we will work with a limited list of three cat diseases for demonstration purposes.

1. First List the diseases in any order.

Canine Distemper Toxascaris Tuberculosis

2. Then define the criteria by which you will compare the diseases such as effect on the individual, potential effect on the wild population, how transmissible the disease is, etc.

3. Then compare the first disease on the list to the second and decide which is more important for the criteria you have defined and place an X to the right of that disease that you feel is most important.

**Canine Distemper X Tuberculosis** Toxascaris

4. Then compare the first disease on the list to the third and decide which is more important according to your criteria and place an x beside it.

Canine Distemper X X Tuberculosis Toxascaris

5. Then compare the second disease on the list to the third and repeat the exercise, placing an X by the disease you consider most important according to your criteria.

Canine Distemper X X Tuberculosis Toxascaris X

6. Repeat this process until all diseases on the list have been compared to all the other diseases one at a time. Then add up the number of X's by each disease and rewrite your list so that the disease with the most X's is at the top of the list.

Canine Distemper	ΧХ	2
Toxascaris	Х	1
Tuberculosis		0

This exercise can be carried out individually or can be done in a working group or can be done individually by all the individuals

### **Project Planning and Management**

Project Name:
Brief project narrative description:
Species to be translocated:
Purpose of Project:
Origin of Animals:
Wild Rehabilitation Captive
How animals will be obtained:
How many sources of animals are there?
Free Ranging Captures? Method Of Capture:

Rehabilitation Center? How many of this species and related species are housed there?

Captive - Zoo or Similar:\_\_\_\_\_

How many of this species and related species are house there?

#### **Transportation:**

List all locations the animals will be in from the site of origin to the actual release:

Will the animals be housed temporarily at any sites between the site of origin and the release site

What specific means (truck, airplane, boat) will be used to move the animals in each part of the transportation?

How will the animals be housed or confined during transportation and holding at temporary locations or release sites?
Enclosure type:
Singly or in a group?
Will animals be exposed to other species, related or not, during any part of transportation or temporary housing?
Which species?
How will the animal be fed and watered during transportation and temporary housing?
How will these items be obtained?
Release Site:
Will the release be slow (soft) release or quick release:
Will animals be held at the release site for acclimation or other reasons? If so how long?
Is a quarantine or disease testing program planned?
Attach a description if available
What diseases may be present in this species or related species in the release area?

# ANIMAL MOVEMENTS AND DISEASE RISK

A WORKBOOK

4th Edition

South Africa

18-21 November 2002

HAZARD IDENTIFICATION
Hazard Identification
Two different tools are available in this section. Different people may be more comfortable with one or the other. You can choose which you use, you can use both, modify whats here or you can create your own. Whichever technique you use, <b>it is crucial that you always record the basis for your conclusion, document your information. Transparency is key to the process.</b>
<ul> <li>Introduction</li> <li>The hazard identification process provides a means for limiting the number of diseases considered potentially threatening to the survivability of the animal population of concern. The process should yield information required to answer the question: are the potential effects of this disease harmful enough to warrant further assessment using other tools available. To begin the hazard identification process, one must first describe: <ul> <li>the population of concern;</li> <li>the population of concern;</li> <li>the adverse outcome(s) of concern;</li> </ul> </li> <li>the environment (econiche?) within which the population lives.</li> </ul>
• The above description provides a framework in which the importance of the potential hazard can more adequately be judged.
<ul> <li>Defining hazard criteria</li> <li>Establishing the criteria defining a hazard is the first step in the identification process. For a potential hazard to be considered a true hazard, usually all criteria must be met. The following criteria establish that a particular disease is important enough for its effects to be modeled: <ul> <li>The disease reservoir exists within the habitat of the population of concern;</li> <li>Disease transmission routes for the spread of disease are likely to occur in the environmental setting outlined above;</li> <li>Exposure is likely to occur and at a level high enough to result in infection;</li> <li>Consequences of exposure include the adverse outcomes of concern considered above (e.g. high morbidity, mortality or economic impact);</li> <li>The disease is likely to spread throughout the population once it has been introduced.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

# **Disease/Host Interaction**

Hazard identification also considers characteristics of the host, the disease agent and the environment in which the disease/host interaction takes place. This interaction is depicted in Figure 1 below.

Figure 1: Important factors in disease transmission to consider in the hazard identification process



e hazards
diseas
identify
toi
nformation
-=
lecting
$\overline{\mathbf{v}}$

The table format below provides a worksheet for collecting relevant information about potential hazards. These data, including references, should be gathered for each potential hazard under consideration.

Table 1: Worksheet to more quantifiably characterize potential hazards

Potential for spread within population once introduced	
Host susceptibility	
Virulence (LD50)	
Pathogenicity	
Infectivity (ID50)	
Route(s) of potential exposure	
Route(s) of trans.	
Agent durability in env.	
Reservoir(s)	
Category (B,V,F,P)	
Agent/disease	

# Key and definitions:

Agent/disease: Name the condition, disease or specific microbiological agent

Indicate the category that this disease agent falls under. Bacteria (B); Viral (V); Fungal (F); Parasitic (P) Category:

object (plant, soil, feces, etc.) or any combination of these serving as a habitat of a pathogen that reproduces itself in Name the reservoir(s) for this disease. The reservoir is: any animate (humans, animals, insects, etc.) or inanimate such a way as to be transmitted to a susceptible host. Reservoir:

Agent durability in environment:

Describe the hardiness of the agent in the environment. Is it resistant to UV light, desiccation etc.? What are the environmental factors present in this scenario that may increase/decrease survivability of the agent?

Route(s) of transmission:

Horizontal vs. Vertical; Direct vs. Indirect; +/- biological vectors; +/- mechanical vectors; airborne; sexual; other routes Action/event/process whereby a pathogen is passed from one individual to another. How is the agent transmitted? of direct contact etc.

Potential route(s) of exposure:

Potential routes of exposure are those mentioned above in routes of transmission that are likely given the scenario outlined, as stated in the intoduction

- susceptible host. It is commonly measured using the ID50 the median infective dose or, the dose that will infect The characteristic of a microorganism that allows it to infect and subsequently survive and multiply within a 50% of an exposed group. Infectivity:
- Pathogenicity: The host-specific ability of an agent to cause disease, given infectivity, or otherwise induce pathological change in a susceptible host. The types of pathological change should be outlined as well.
- Given disease, the host-specific ability of an infectious agent to multiply in the host while inducing lesions and disease; the severity of signs given disease; the number of infected that actually come down with clinical disease; often measured by the LD50 - the median lethal dose - or, the dose that will kill 50% of the tested group Virulence:
- Can be in terms of individual or the group (herd immunity). Any known susceptibility factors should be outlined here. genetics, acquired conditions or any other factor making an individual more likely to become infected upon exposure. Susceptibility: The state of being readily affected by a pathogen; a lack of resistance due to insufficient immunity because of: age,

Potential for spread:

structure), herd immune status, characteristics of the agent (infectivity). This is often measured by Ro - the number of Potential for spread depends on numerous factors including housing density, contact between animals (contact ndividuals that one infected individual may infect.

\*\* definitions derived from the Dictionary of Veterinary Epidemiology. Toma B, Vaillancourt J, Dufour B, Eliot M, Moutou F, Marsh W, Benet J, Sanaa M, Michel P. Iowa State University Press, Ames. 1999.

# **Rough Assessment Worksheet**

and substantiate their intuitive information. This list will provide an initial basis to start a risk assessment and will begin to rank the diseases so that the most significant can be addressed as higher priorities. The list formulated will be utilized in completing further investigation and further input from additional sources and as new information is revealed. In addition, the relative ranking and aspects of the assessment process. It is likely that the disease list will be added to as work progresses, as there is additional significance of diseases will change as more specific and accurate data is applied to areas that rely only on your intuitive impression at The intent of this worksheet is only to quickly begin the assessment process and to enable biologists and clinicians to begin to quantify this point.

released at this point. It may be valuable to repeat this process thinking in terms of other species in the area that may be effected by the introducing a disease into a wild population through the animals to be released. We are not necessarily directly concerned about the effect on the released animals at this point. We also will focus at this point only on the species, released and wild populations, to be At this stage the only concern we wish to address is to look at this in the context of how likely is it and what could be the effect of released species.

being mild in effect or less likely to occur and 5 being serious in effect or very likely to occur. Explain your rationale for each following items based on your personal knowledge and experience. Rate each item for each disease on a scale of 1 to 5 with 1 List all known infectious diseases you are aware of for the species being released or moved. For each disease estimate the disease element listed in the attached sheet.

									_
Estimated Significance to the Program									
Severity for the Population									
Severity for the Individual if clinical									
Likelihood of Transmitting it to Others									
Likelihood of Becoming Infected									
Likelihood of Exposure									
Likelihood of Susceptibility									
Disease								~	

Headings can be changed, make them work for your project and your group

You should recognize that this chart will reflect your own personal biases and experiences. Each person that completes this sheet for any particular species may get substantially different results. Increasing the amount of input, either from other individuals or from publications, will increase the value of this initial screening.

ion
lat
olar
Ext
þ
an
ies
gor
- en
Ē
ñ

require repeated and prolonged exposure in order to infect an animal. Susceptibility is also effected by common management practices Likelihood of Susceptibility- What is the likelihood that an individual animal to be released will be susceptible to this disease? If it is likely that the animal to be released is able to get the disease easily if it is exposed, then you would rank it as 3. If the animal is very within populations or sources of animals, for example it may a known common policy in some areas to vaccinate species for some unlikely to get the disease even if exposed then you would rank it as 1. For instance some diseases such as tuberculosis seem to diseases, therefore making them less susceptible to diseases when exposed.

Likelihood of Exposure- What is the likelihood that the animal to be released will be or have been exposed to this disease? In general elements such as what you know about the occurence of the disease in other captive animals that the release animal may be exposed to, the prevalence in wildlife or feral domestic animals the release animal may be exposed to, how well the organism survives in the this is intended to reflect exposure prior to release so that the animal may carry the disease into the wild population. Exposure may occur at the site of origin of the animal, during transport to the release site, during holding and preparation for release. Consider environment. Likelihood of Becoming Infected- If an animal becomes exposed, what is the likelihood that the animal will actually become infected and capable of transmitting the disease. This will include animals that are vaccinated and unlikely to become clinically ill themselves but may act as carriers in the some diseases. For instance, with the disease rabies in carnivores, if is a common management practice for animals that might enter the release program to be vaccinated already, it is very unlikely that these animals could transmit the disease even if they were exposed.

function of many possible factors. The social behavior of the species may be significant in that primarily solitary species such as most Likelihood of Transmitting it to Others- Is the disease causing organism likely to be transmitted to other individual. This will be a big cats may be less likely to transmit diseases that require direct contact to each other than species that live in social groups such as many primates or hoofstock species. Another factor may be the organisms ability to survive in the environment. Many parasites survive well and remain potentially infective for a long period of time but many viruses do not. Severity for the Individual- If an individual in the wild population does become clinically ill with the disease, how severe is it. Does it make the animal severely ill quickly and have a high probability of killing the animal or is it a disease that rarely kills an animal or takes a long time to have a significant effect. Severity for the Population- If a disease is likely to spread quickly through a population and kill many animals in the population then However some diseases may not have a significant effect on individual animals but will profoundly effect the population such as the it would be considered severe for the population as well as for individuals such as rabies in wild dogs or canine distemper in lions. potential effect of brucellosis in wild cattle species which would not effect an individual animal in any significant way but could profoundly effect the wild population overall by reducing reproduction significantly.

with regard to your intuitive sense of their importance. Diseases which have the highest values in this column will likely be the most Estimated Significance to the Program- Sum the numerical values assigned to each category for this particular disease. This value will give some sense of what the importance is of this particular disease for this release program and enable you to rank the diseases significant diseases to address in sorting through the steps needed in a release program.

Disease	
Likelihood of Susceptibility	
Likelihood of Exposure	
Likelihood of Becoming Infected	
	I
Likelihood of Transmitting it to Others	

Severity for the Individual

I

Severity for the Population

I

Estimated Significance to the Program\_\_\_\_\_

I

References Used Rough Assessment Worksheet Example

Tiger example

Russia. At this stage no quarantine or testing program is defined. The cats will come from a variety of North American zoos. The area the tigers will be released into does contain free ranging tigers as well as occasional leopards in overlapping ranges. This example considers the hypothetical reintroduction of captive born Siberian tigers from North American zoos into Far Eastern

Estimated	Significance to the Program	17		15	11		15	8		12	13					
Severity for	the Population	5		1	1		1	1		2	1					
Severity for	the Individual if clinical	5		1	5		5	3		4	3					
Likelihood of	Transmitting it to Others	1		2	1		2	1		1	1					
Likelihood of	Becoming Infected	2		3	1		5	1		3	5					
Likelihood of	Exposure	1		3	1		1	1		1	2					
Likelihood of	Susceptibility	З		5	2		1	1		1	1					
Disease		Canine	Distemper	Toxascaris cati	Tuberculosis	(M. bovis)	Rabies	Feline	leukemia	Panleukopenia	Feline	Rhinotracheitis				

-
Z
ij
Ħ
5
F
Ĩ
-9-
r <del>,</del> Si
<b>H</b>
þ
q
5
\$
.е
9
0
Ľ,
5
$\mathbf{C}$

require repeated and prolonged exposure in order to infect an animal. Susceptibility is also effected by common management practices Likelihood of Susceptibility- What is the likelihood that an individual animal to be released will be susceptible to this disease? If it is likely that the animal to be released is able to get the disease easily if it is exposed, then you would rank it as 3. If the animal is very within populations or sources of animals, for example it may a known common policy in some areas to vaccinate species for some unlikely to get the disease even if exposed then you would rank it as 1. For instance some diseases such as tuberculosis seem to diseases, therefore making them less susceptible to diseases when exposed.

Likelihood of Exposure- What is the likelihood that the animal to be released will be or have been exposed to this disease? In general elements such as what you know about the occurence of the disease in other captive animals that the release animal may be exposed to, the prevalence in wildlife or feral domestic animals the release animal may be exposed to, how well the organism survives in the this is intended to reflect exposure prior to release so that the animal may carry the disease into the wild population. Exposure may occur at the site of origin of the animal, during transport to the release site, during holding and preparation for release. Consider environment. Likelihood of Becoming Infected- If an animal becomes exposed, what is the likelihood that the animal will actually become infected and capable of transmitting the disease. This will include animals that are vaccinated and unlikely to become clinically ill themselves but may act as carriers in the some diseases. For instance, with the disease rabies in carnivores, if is a common management practice for animals that might enter the release program to be vaccinated already, it is very unlikely that these animals could transmit the disease even if they were exposed.

function of many possible factors. The social behavior of the species may be significant in that primarily solitary species such as most Likelihood of Transmitting it to Others- Is the disease causing organism likely to be transmitted to other individual. This will be a big cats may be less likely to transmit diseases that require direct contact to each other than species that live in social groups such as many primates or hoofstock species. Another factor may be the organisms ability to survive in the environment. Many parasites survive well and remain potentially infective for a long period of time but many viruses do not. Severity for the Individual- If an individual in the wild population does become clinically ill with the disease, how severe is it. Does it make the animal severely ill quickly and have a high probability of killing the animal or is it a disease that rarely kills an animal or takes a long time to have a significant effect. Severity for the Population- If a disease is likely to spread quickly through a population and kill many animals in the population then However some diseases may not have a significant effect on individual animals but will profoundly effect the population such as the it would be considered severe for the population as well as for individuals such as rabies in wild dogs or canine distemper in lions. potential effect of brucellosis in wild cattle species which would not effect an individual animal in any significant way but could profoundly effect the wild population overall by reducing reproduction significantly.

with regard to your intuitive sense of their importance. Diseases which have the highest values in this column will likely be the most Estimated Significance to the Program- Sum the numerical values assigned to each category for this particular disease. This value will give some sense of what the importance is of this particular disease for this release program and enable you to rank the diseases significant diseases to address in sorting through the steps needed in a release program.

Disease Canine Distemper, a viral disease primarily of dogs that causes CNS disease and possibly enteritis in big cats
Likelihood of Susceptibility <u>Based on known, documented outbreaks of canine distemper in captive populations in the United</u>
States tigers are known to be susceptible to the disease. Although research has not been possible to assign an accurate numerical value
to the susceptibility of the species in general but it is reasonable to assume at this point that all individuals are highly susceptible.
Vaccination is possible but very uncommon at this time.
Likelihood of Exposure The management of most captive animals makes it unlikely that they will be exposed to this virus which
is normally transmitted by dogs and by raccoons
Likelihood of Becoming Infected Very little is understood about how this disease works in cats. I assume that it is possible that a carrier state can
exist and that animals are likely to become infected if exposed.
Likelihood of Transmitting it to Others <u>Evidence from lions in the Serengetti indicates that this disease is highly infectious between individuals</u> .
however the generally solitary behavior of tigers in the wild makes it much less likely that they would transmit the virus to each other.
Severity for the Individual <u>Canine distemper has caused a high mortality rate in big cats both in captivity and in the wild</u>
Severity for the Population <u>This virus seems to be potentially very serious for the wild population if it is introduced, having the</u>

possibility to eliminate many individual animals from the wild population	
Estimated Significance to the Program <u>This virus seems likely to be an important disease to investigate further and c</u>	er and develop a management plan for
for this program	
References Ilead Annel MIG R A Vates GI Eclev, II Remetain S Sentinelli I H Snel-	H Cralmon I D Miller I H Arn M
Neterclices Osed Appel, M.J.O., N.A. 1 ares, O.L. PORY, J.J. Dernstent, D. Dannient, L.H. Spen	<u>11. Spennan, L.D. Ivnnet, L.H. Alp, IV.</u>
Anderson, M. Barr, S. Pearce-Kelling and B.A. Summers. Canine distemper epizootic in lions, tigers	s, tigers and leopards in North America.
1994 J. of Vet. Diag. Invest. (In Press).	
Roelke-Parker, M.E., L. Munson, C. Packer, et.al. A canine distemper virus epidemic in Serengeti li	ngeti lions (Panthera leo). Nature 379:

441-445, 1996

Disease Toxascaris cati, an enteric parasite
Likelihood of Susceptibility This parasite is quite common in captive animals and although most zoos treat for the parasite and it is
possible to eliminate it, reinfection is quite common. Animals that are exposed are almost certainly susceptible to it.
Likelihood of ExposureThis parasite is quite common in captive animals and although most zoos treat for the parasite and it is
possible to eliminate it , reinfection is quite common and most animals are likely to be exposed to it
Likelihood of Becoming Infected <u>The high probability of exposure and high susceptibility make it likely that animals will become infected</u>
Likelihood of Transmitting it to OthersAnimals are very likely to shed oocytes of the parasite and transmit it to other cats. The solitary lifestyle or the animals reduces transmissiion likelihood somewhat
Severity for the Individual <u>Although heavy parasite loads can be debilitating, it is primarily an issue for very young or very old</u> animals
Severity for the Population <u>Parasites probably will not have much effect on the wild population and are probably already present</u>
althouch that is not confirmed

Estimated Significance to the Program The prevalence and susceptibility of the animals to this disease makes it likely to occur but it is of relatively low
impact for the individual or the population. However it is also very straightforward to diagnose and to treat so it seems likely that it
should be addressed in this program planning.
References Used Fowler- Zoo Animal Medicine

Disease Tuberculosis, Mycobacteria bovis. a bacterial systemic disease primarily of cattle but transmitted through meat or directly
animal to animal primarily by aerosol
Likelihood of Susceptibility: Most mammals are considered resistant but susceptible in the right circumstances
Likelihood of Exposure The disease is very rare in most captive animal circumstances. Meat would pose the likeliest risk of
exposure but most captive North American animals are fed inspected meat in which TB is very very rare. There have been cases in
captive big cats fed meat from animals that died of TB and in wild lions in South Africa that feed on TB infected prey
Likelihood of Becoming Infection generally seems to require repeated, prolonged exposure and is very unlikely considering the source of
the animals for the program.
Likelihood of Transmitting it to Others The solitary behavior of tigers makes it very unlikely that any animal would be in sufficiently prolonged
contact with another animal to be able to transmit the disease
Severity for the Individual <u>Animals which develop clinical tuberculosis will be severely debilitated and die of the disease</u>

Severity for the Population It is difficult to imagine a scenario where this disease could significantly effect the wild population of
this species unless prey species were widely infected
Estimated Significance to the Program This disease is probably not of significant concern in this program
References UsedMontali- Mycobacteria in Zoo Animals?; Fowler – Zoo Animal Medicine; Douw Grobler, South Africa,
personal communication

Disease Rabies, a viral disease causing central nervous system disease in mammals
Likelihood of Susceptibility <u>All mammals are considered susceptible if properly exposed to the disease, many zoos vaccinate for</u>
the virus with killed vaccines which is thought to protect the animals from the disease if exposed
Likelihood of Exposure Rabies does occur in North America in wild and domestic animals, however transmission is almost
always directly from a bite from an infected animal, which is very unlikely to happen with this species
Likelihood of Becoming Infected <u>The chance of even being exposed is very low and if vaccinated, it is very unlikely that an animal could develop</u>
the disease
Likelihood of Transmitting it to Others <u>Animals must develop clinical rabies in order to transmit it and then must bite another animal in order to</u>
transmit the disease. There is low probability that any of the introduced animals could develop the disease and if they did, it is unlikely
they would encounter another cat to bite to transmit the disease to
Severity for the Individual <u>Severely effects individuals, resulting in death in a relatively short time</u>

Estimated Significance to the Program
--

# ANIMAL MOVEMENTS AND DISEASE RISK

## A WORKBOOK

### 4th Edition

### South Africa

18-21 November 2002

**DECISION ANALYSIS PROTOCOLS** 

### Protocol for Disease Risk Analysis for Animal Movement

\*\*italicized words defined in glossary

# Section 1: Risk Analysis - Define the Big Picture Problem/Policy and Identify Potential Hazards

This is the area where you concentrate on the big picture. This is done in order to frame the issue in order to create a flow chart of the problem and identify potential hazards to be ranked in the hazard identification phase. Reintroduction of Ruffed Lemurs into Madagascar will be used as an example.

### Step 1: Summarize the issues surrounding the entire process.

Provide background (tell the story) in introductory format

### Example: Background on Lemur Movements

Project started 1995, involved North American and Betampona reserve in Madagascar (2500 ha East Coast - island pop) - carrying capacity of 60 (only 25-30 exist). Population modeling showed not sufficient genetic diversity to sustain long-term (however, can increase long-term genetic health if add 20+ animals). Move animals within Madagascar (but sub-speciation and behavioral abnormalities of pets a major concern). Therefore, decision made to move captive animals from zoos in N. American and European zoos. Interest to see if released zoo animals would work. SSP coordinator selects animals by SSP pedigree - only represented bloodlines, and would include extensive medical examinations; animals must have reproduced, be young adults (2-3 years) ideally (for long breeding life). The original plan was to release pairs or breeding groups. It is the responsibility of the veterinary advisor to look at medical concerns. In 1997 five lemurs were reintroduced, 1998 four, 5/9 are now dead. Pre-release training on St. Catherine's Island and Duke University - adds other disease risk issues. Released animals are radio-collared and tracked by field biologists. Ideally 6 month pre-release training, but actually 2-3 months, then another very short pre-release in reserve before actual release. Next release scheduled this fall (5 total, but one already died). Release during dry season - easier for biologists to track.

### **Potential Benefits of Animal Movement**

Ideally, this program would allow roughed lemurs to reach carrying capacity and increase genetic diversity in the wild population for long-term genetic health. Lost 5 out of 9 already – not known if this rate is higher than natural occurrence. Some released animals have already integrated into natural groups; others are alone or are making new groupings. Two released pairs have reproduced, one reproduced with a wild lemur. Two surviving offspring have been produced from the translocated animals. Agricultural development around reserve (fragmentation) thought to cause original reduction in population. Last 10 years, increase in management of reserve, guards, increased research component, lots more activity and interest – seems to be secure at this time. Other benefits – flagship species to help protect reserve, and to

continue interest in Madagascar and their own people and students. Two other projects this year – research station (with a manager) initiated. Now other projects come in as a result. No ecotourism in this reserve. Permits available for research only.

Approached the task of evaluating disease risk by performing literature search and surveying animals in zoos in Madagascar to see major disease problems (found few). Added some more based on research and review.

### Step 2: Identify and define potential problem(s)

What problem(s) does step 1 bring out that need to be evaluated?

- List all population-level problems. This is not yet the point at which you define the specific detailed risk assessment question so leave them broad. Take into account potential effects on the following species:
  - o Humans
  - Domestic animals
  - Other wildlife species

### Example: Lemur disease risk

Disease may potentially impact this program in three ways. Reintroduced Lemurs may bring diseases with them that affect a naïve local free-range population. Naïve reintroduced Lemurs may succumb to existing diseases at the point of reintroduction. Disease may be introduced somewhere along the reintroduction pathway from human interaction, or be introduced to humans as well. Specifically, what is the likelihood (risk) of introducing a hazard into the Madagascan lemur population and to have it becomes endemic in the whole ecosystem (whole island)?

### **Step 3: Completely outline the general pathway.**

- Detail all aspects of animal movements in box diagram form. This should diagram the entire flow of the process covered in the problem above.
- Include such things as
  - o Source
  - Quarantine procedures
  - Transport methods
  - Procedures done at all points on diagram
  - o End points
- Write a narrative for the flow diagram so that the pathway may stand-alone.

### Example - Ruffed Lemur Reintroduction Pathway



# **Step 4: Hazard Identification - Identify and list all** *potential hazards* (This will vary depending on the specific risk assessment).

- Create a master list(s) of diseases that potentially affect the species outlined in the problem. This information can come from sources such as:
  - o PHVA
  - Quarantine and health screening worksheet(s)
  - o Disease surveys
  - o Literature search
  - o SSP Veterinary Advisor protocols
- Identify potential hazards for each location (lists may vary depending on regional differences).
  - Source or point of origin
  - Midpoints along the pathway (i.e. during transport, handling, soft release, quarantine, etc.)
  - Destination population
- Make sure to consider all possible infectious and non-infectious disease processes including zoonoses that can be introduced along the pathway

Diseases of concern:							
Disease of	Recommended	Where is it of	Testing	Sample	Results		
Concern	Test	concern	Location	Amount			
Hep A	Sero						
Нер В	Sero						
Herpes	Sero						
Simplex							
Cytomeg virus	Sero						
Epstein Barr	Sero						
Measles	Sero						
Salmonella	Fecal x 3						
Shigella	Fecal x 3						
Campylob	Fecal x 3						
Yersinia	Fecal x 3						
TB	ID skin						
Тохо	Sero						
T. cruz	Cult + Sero						
Cutarebra	P. Ex						
Strongyloides	Fecal x 3						
Entamoeba	Fecal x 3						
Lyme's	Skin biopsy						
Ehrlichia	Sero (PCR)						
RMSF	Sero (PCR)						
gEctos (ticks)	P Ex						

### **Example - Ruffed Lemur Reintroduction**

### **Step 5: Create list of** *hazards*

- The point of this step is to filter the larger list of potential hazards down to those that need to be modeled in the risk assessment (hazard list). These are high risk diseases that need to be assessed in detail.
- Create hazard list from potential hazard list using *ranking criteria* 
  - Define ranking criteria (determined by the risk assessor).
    - These are factors that are important in determining if potential hazards should be fully assessed in the *risk assessment* (i.e., potential hazards to *hazards*).
    - Example of ranking criteria include:
      - Infectivity
      - *Pathogenicity*: Morbidity and mortality
      - *Transmissibility*: Routes and rates; Presence of competent vectors
      - *Susceptibility:* Species of concern; Source and destination; Humans; Domestic animals; Other wildlife species
      - Severity in terms of: Reproductive effects; Morbidity and mortality; None (or unknown); Immunosuppression (alter susceptibility);
      - Economic impacts on: Species of concern; Ecosystem; Humans; Domestic animals
      - Existing prevalence and incidence
- You should now have a list of hazards that is a subset of potential hazard list
- Each hazard must be assessed in the *Risk Assessment*.

### Section 2: Risk Assessment

A risk assessment must be done on each hazard identified in section #1. Risk assessment is the process of determining the likelihood or probability of adverse health effects associated with hazard exposure. This may be qualitative or quantitative depending on the needs of the users and the amount of data available. At this point, the problem definition needs to be very specifically refined.

Step 6: Define specific risk assessment question.

In order to build a model, a specific question must be asked. This is usually one of many questions that could be asked under the broad policy question. This question will be asked for every disease of concern identified in the hazard identification phase above.

Formulate a specific question including all or some of the following:

Species Source Destination Specific hazard(s) Transport method(s) Pathway

Specific question format: What is the likelihood of introducing [species, animal or group] positive for ["x" hazard] from [source] to [destination] via [transport method] on [pathway]?

i.e. What is the likelihood of introducing Lemurs positive for TB from Kalamazoo to Timbuktu via the transport route described in the pathway flowchart for reintroduction?

Specific Example: Ruffed Lemur Reintroduction

What is the likelihood of introducing TB into lemurs into Betampona given that the current population is TB-free?

### Step 7: Build the Risk Assessment Model to Assess Hazard

- Draw a flow diagram based on the specific question (this may be identical to the general flow diagram in section 1, step 3 or may include additional steps specific to the narrow question).
- Identify important steps known as critical control points (CCP). A critical control point is any point in the transportation pathway where the hazard may be introduced or released (depending on the question) into or from the pathway. These are subjective and will vary depending upon case scenario.



### Example: Ruffed Lemur Reintroduction

### **Step 8: Perform Qualitative Assessment**

- Define qualitative grading scale examples include high/medium/low; present/absent; yes/no; acceptable/non-acceptable.
- For each CCP, describe the important factors that contribute to the risk at that point. For instance, the prevalence of disease in the source population (high/medium/low), the sensitivity of diagnostic tests (good/bad), the likelihood of a disease being introduced through human contact (high/medium/low).
- State the *assumptions* used in the model. Assumptions are the conditions surrounding critical control points that need to be clarified for the process to be repeatable. For example, when including animal shipment as a CCP, you need to define the details of the move such as the type of container, how many animals will be held in the container, the kind of vehicle used etc.

- Assess the integrity of the model
- Does it make sense?
  - Does it flow?
  - Are there too many steps?
  - Are there not enough steps?
- Does it answer the question?
  - If yes, congratulations you have completed your Risk Assessment!
  - If no, move on to Step 9 (Quantitative Assessment).

### Example: Ruffed Lemur Reintroduction

### **Model Formulation:**

Point 1: Probability of animal x leaving the zoo infected with disease y Probability of an infected animal existing at the zoo = LOW Probability of not detecting (FN) before it moves on = LOW OVERALL = LOW

**Point 2**: Probability of previous infection surviving transport or introduction of agent during transport.

Probability of host survival Probability of agent survival Probability of introduction during transport Assume that no agent introduced and agent survives so overall remains LOW

**Point 3**: Probability that infectious animal gets out of boot camp. Prob. of FN on initial exam/quar = LOW

Prob of FN on final quar exam = LOW Prob of introduction of new infection and FN test = VERY LOW OVERALL = LOW - VERY LOW

**Point 4**: Transport #2: Probability of previous infection surviving transport or introduction of agent during transport from GA to Madagascar.

Probability of host survival Probability of agent survival Probability of introduction during transport Assume that no agent introduced and agent survives so overall remains LOW - VERY LOW

**Point 5**: Probability of release in Madagascar at release site (no testing) or introduction of agent before release.

No risk was greater than LOW so overall cumulative is LOW

### Step 9: Perform Quantitative Assessment if Needed

There are numerous ways to do this depending on the amount and quality of the data. This may be done deterministically or stochastically. Deterministic models use point estimates for the variables while stochastic models use more complicated formulas to incorporate variability. Deterministic models depend on things such as means and medians while ranges, standard deviations or variance estimates, may represent stochastic variables. Deterministic quantitative assessments may be done using paper, pencil and a calculator, as long as the person has a good background in basic probability theory. Stochastic models make use of more complicated software; for these projects, it is recommended to consult a risk assessment specialist.

### Deterministic model

- May be used when reliable point estimates are available and there is little uncertainty or variability surrounding the data. Can also be used when little data exists and expert opinion needs to be relied upon.
  - Point estimates can be:
    - Number(s), mean, std. deviation etc.
    - Probability
    - Percentages
  - Derive estimates from: Literature; Expert opinion (personal communication); Personal experience; Specific data
    - [Try to avoid guessing if possible but, sometimes that is all that is available. The lack of information should be described under uncertainty and may also help to guide future research resources and efforts.]
  - Multiply point estimates for final risk probability.
    - Did it work?
    - Does it make sense?
    - Does it answer the question?

### Example: Ruffed Lemur Reintroduction

### **Deterministic Model Formulation:**

Point 1: Probability of animal x leaving the zoo infected with disease y Probability of an infected animal multiplied by: Probability of not detecting (FN) before it moves on (1-Se) Can assume an infection (1) or use prevalence estimate [Skin test and radiograph, CBC and physical exam for cumulative sensitivity of 0.5]
Prev est = 0.001 (3pos/5000 animals in 25 years) 1-.5 = .5 (p)FN .001 x .5 = .0005 = likelihood of infected animal leaving zoo with TB **Point 2**: Probability of previous infection surviving transport or introduction of agent during transport.

Probability of host survival Probability of agent survival Probability of introduction during transport Assume that no agent introduced and agent survives so prob still .0005

Point 3: Probability that infectious animal gets out of boot camp. Prob. of FN on initial exam/quar Prob of FN on final quar exam Prob of introduction of new infection and FN test 2 tests X .5 p(FN) = 0.25 .0005 X .25 = .000125 chance that animal gets out of boot camp with infection

**Point 4**: Transport #2: Probability of previous infection surviving transport or introduction of agent during transport from GA to Madagascar.

Probability of host survival Probability of agent survival Probability of introduction during transport Assume that no agent introduced and agent survives so still .000125

**Point 5**: Probability of release in Madagascar at release site (no testing) or introduction of agent before release.

0.0001 (1 in 10,000 animals) chance of releasing a positive (TB) Lemur into wild based on human prevalence and wild (guestimate)

### **CONCLUSIONS:**

As a result of low likelihood of release, both qualitatively and quantitatively, the decision was made not to pursue further studies using stochastic modeling.

*What if I need to get fancier???*  $\rightarrow$  *Stochastic model* 

- Used to incorporate uncertainty surrounding point estimates. This adds a level of complexity to the model and will need to be performed with the assistance of an expert modeler.
- Moving from point estimates to the incorporation of ranges or variability in the model. Rarely does a point estimate actually represent the true likelihood of an event. Stochastic modeling allows for variability of the estimate to be incorporated into the model.
- Advantages of using it?
  - Incorporating the use of distributions (e.g., worse versus best scenarios)
  - Easily adaptable/changeable
  - Can perform multiple scenario
  - More rapid, once set
  - Sensitivity analysis
  - Simulations/Monte Carlo

- When is it needed?
  - More detailed knowledge
  - Increases credibility
  - Have to use a range for estimate
  - Have expertise, funds and time
  - Seriousness, complexity of the problem
- Useful tools (e.g., software)?
  - Excel
  - @Risk or Decision Tools (Palisade Co.)
  - Stella
  - Vortex (CBSG)
  - Epi Info (CDC)

### Step 9: Describe *uncertainty* of process.

Describe all of the things that you are unsure about in this process. Also describe the degree to which you are unsure. Areas usually included are: the pathway flow diagram, the CCP's used in the model, the data inputs (point estimates etc.), Sensitivity/Specificity of diagnostic tests, disease prevalence estimates, host and agent survivability and transmission efficiency.
### **Glossary:**

Acceptable risk: Risk level judged to be compatible with the protection of animal and public health within the pathway of concern.

**Assumptions:** Properties/characteristics of parameters in a risk assessment which are fixed within the model and do not change. They may be objective or subjective, but must be explicitly stated in the risk assessment to enhance transparency and risk communication.

**Deterministic model:** A model whose inputs are completely determined by a given set of conditions resulting in point estimates.

**Hazard:** A potential hazard that meets the specifications of established ranking criteria and is now considered a high priority potential hazard; all identified hazards must be included in the risk assessment.

**Hazard identification:** The process of identifying the pathogenic agents which could potentially be introduced into or released from the reintroduction pathway of concern.

**Infectiousness:** The ease by which a disease organism is transmitted from one host to another; often used synonymously with transmissibility/communicability.

**Infectivity:** The characteristic of a microorganism that allows it to infect and subsequently survive and multiply within a susceptible host.

**Model:** Diagram, flow chart, mathematical or statistical summarization/representation of a complex real-world process.

**Pathogenicity**: Host-specific ability of an agent to cause disease or otherwise induce pathological change in a susceptible host.

**Potential hazard:** Any pathogenic agent that could produce adverse consequences on the reintroduction program.

**Qualitative risk assessment:** An assessment where the outputs on the likelihood of the outcome or the magnitude of the consequences are expressed in qualitative terms such as high, medium, low or negligible.

**Quantitative risk assessment:** An assessment where the outputs of the risk assessment are expressed numerically.

**Ranking criteria:** Specific characteristics, properties or attributes of an agent or situation used to differentiate a potential hazard from a hazard during hazard identification; criteria used to decide which potential hazards must be assessed in the risk assessment.

**Risk:** The likelihood (probability or frequency) and magnitude of the occurrence of an adverse event or hazard; a measure of the probability of harm and the severity of the unwanted adverse effect.

**Risk analysis:** The process composed of hazard identification, risk assessment, risk management and risk communication.

**Risk assessment:** The evaluation of the likelihood and consequences of entry, establishment, or spread of a pathogenic agent within the pathway or species of concern.

**Risk communication:** Risk communication is the interactive exchange of information on risk among risk assessors, risk managers and other interested parties (stakeholders).

**Risk management:** The process of identifying, selecting and implementing measures that can be applied to reduce the level of risk.

**Sensitivity analysis:** The process of examining the impact of the variation in individual model inputs on the model outputs in a quantitative risk assessment.

**Stochastic/probabilistic model:** A model whose inputs represent the inherent variability and uncertainty of the situation; this may be accomplished by incorporating variance and standard deviations around point estimates or by performing multiple iterations of the model using a random number generator.

**Susceptibility:** The state of being readily affected by a pathogen; a lack of resistance to a pathogen.

**Uncertainty:** The lack of precise knowledge of the input values which is due to measurement error or to lack of knowledge. The degree to which you don't know the answer to a specific question. For example, the sensitivity or specificity of a radiograph for diagnosing TB is very uncertain.

**Variability:** A real-world complexity in which the value of an input is not the same for each case due to natural diversity in a given population.

**Virulence:** The host-specific ability of an infectious agent to multiply in the host while inducing lesions and disease.

### **Glossary References:**

- Ahl AS, Acree JA, Gipson PS, McDowell RM, Miller L, McElvaine MD. Standardization of nomenclature for animal health risk analysis. Rev. sci. tech. Off. Int. Epiz. 1993. 12(4): 1045-1053.
- 2. OIE. 2000. Import Risk Analysis, Section 1.3, International Animal health Code. Office of International Epizootics. Paris, France.
- 3. Toma B, Vaillancourt JP, Dufour B, *et al.* 1999. Dictionary of Veterinary Epidemiology. Iowa State University Press. Ames, Iowa.

# ANIMAL MOVEMENTS AND DISEASE RISK

A WORKBOOK

4th Edition

**South Africa** 

18-21 November 2002

SYSTEM MODELING - STELLA AND VENSIM

### Using Simulation Models to Assess Effects of Disease (and Other Things!) on Populations

Laura L. Hungerford, DVM, MPH, PhD Department of Epidemiology and Preventive Medicine, School of Medicine University of Maryland, Baltimore

One of the most difficult challenges is making decisions when information about the decision process or possible outcomes is uncertain. When assessing risk of animal movements, there is never likely to be complete data and there are a number of different possible outcomes that are also unknown. One technique for trying to improve decision-making is to use existing scientific data and estimates about the likelihood that certain things will happen to create a model of the situation and predict outcomes. This approach to decision-making has already become wide spread in other fields, and continues to grow as a method for dealing with complicated human and animal health issues. Modeling infectious disease helps us conceptualize and summarize the risk of disease introduction and transmission.

One advantage of modeling is that it creates an explicit, visual picture of our current beliefs and understanding about a problem. If we use modeling software, like STELLA<sup>®</sup> or Vensim<sup>®</sup>, to compose this picture, we can then simulate and predict the logical outcomes from this vision. If these results don't match field observations, it shows us that either our model needs to be revised or that our real world data are biased. The conceptual model may highlight critical information that is currently unknown and needs to be collected before solving the problem. Sensitivity analysis of the model identifies the factors that most strongly influence outcomes. If very contentious points have little impact on final outcomes, this can help build consensus. Models can, additionally, be used to predict consequences, compare potential programs or policies, and quantify efficacy of interventions. Prediction of consequences and evaluation of the effectiveness of interventions are major goals of disease risk assessment.

The reason we are now seeing so many risk assessment and other types of computer models is that they provide a way to address issues that are perceived as "imminent threats". You can't generally know, from past experience, **exactly** what will happen in the future, especially if you are considering doing something that has never been done before. You can use existing data to try to predict, but you can't know for sure until it happens. Models provide a way of making educated predictions resulting in decisions when there is uncertainty. They are seen as these magic "black boxes" that give us answers.

Modeling and risk assessment can be accomplished mentally or using pencil and paper. Computer programs are useful tools as problems or potential options grow more complex. There are a number of different computer programs that can facilitate this process. STELLA<sup>®</sup> is a commercial software program designed for modeling complex problems, made by High Performance Systems, Inc. Information is available at the website:

http://www.hps\_inc.com/edu/stella/stella.htm. Vensim<sup>®</sup> is another commercial software package, that offers the advantage of a free, scaled down version. Information is available at the website: http://www.vensim.com/ Both are graphically oriented programs, which allow diagrams of the problem to be made, then the underlying equations to be completed, then the outcomes to be simulated, and parameters varied. Because they are simple to begin using and have this

graphical interface, these programs lend themselves very well to modeling problems in groups of experts from diverse fields.

A challenge in constructing a model, using either program, is finding the appropriate data. Sources may include the scientific literature, field studies, epidemiologic analyses of risk factors, best guesses, etc. Accepting the validity of the data and agreeing on the underlying assumptions is often the most contentious step in the modeling process. Recognition of specific new data items that need to be collected is a common outcome of the modeling process.

Although STELLA<sup>®</sup> and Vensim<sup>®</sup> are very powerful, they each use a simple set of tools that can be learned very quickly. The following example will show how the tools might be used in building a Vensim<sup>®</sup> model of disease transmission.

There are two main sets of tools in Vensim. The Sketch Tools are used to create a model and the Analysis Tools are used to conduct diagnostics on the model and to view output.



### **Sketch Tools**

**Box Variables** are used to hold or accumulate numbers of things. In disease modeling, these are usually numbers of animals in different stages of disease. Susceptible, infected, and immune subpopulations would be examples of potential boxes in a model. Animals can be thought of as physically moving from one box to another, or they can be considered to have "moved" if their characteristics change, as with disease models.

**Rates, or flows** are used to model movement between boxes. A rate arrow would allow susceptible animals to become infected at some specified rate. This flow would cause the number of susceptible animals to decrease and the number of infected animals to increase.

**Modifier Variables** hold information that stays constant or that is needed to modify the flows in the model. These are a convenient way to represent data that are not the actual numbers of animals, but affect the way animals move between the subpopulations in the model.

**Arrows** illustrate links between parts of the model, aside from the movements of animals. All of the factors that go into calculating the rate at which animals move between stocks are linked to the flow rate calculation through arrows.

**Move/Size Hand** is used to select, stretch and move variables, arrows, rates, etc. when building a model.

**Pacman** is used to "gobble-up" unwanted components when building a model. It is equivalent to the delete key in other software programs

An example of a simple epidemic model would be boxes for susceptible, infected and immune animals with flows between them for infection, recovery and death. This captures, conceptually, the bare bones of the dynamics of an infectious agent in a population.



Starting from this type of base model, additions and enhancements, specific to a disease can be added to make the model more realistic. The animal population dynamics and potential preventive measures can also be included.

This visual representation is the first step in creating a quantitative model that can generate numerical predictions about disease patterns, transmission and risk. But, in many cases, just the process of specifying the model gives insights. It provides a visual summary of what we believe the relationships to be within a complex situation. This can allow us to recognize relationships that were not previously apparent and also stimulate discussion about the problem being modeled between people from disparate backgrounds.

Once the basic structure of the model has been constructed, the **Equations Tool** can be used to click on a variable or flow to open a window where values, relationships and equations can be defined. Data for this aspect of the model can come from review of the scientific literature, field studies, epidemiologic studies, expert opinion, and modeling short-cuts which produce a specific pattern. If some of these data are less than satisfactory, they can be modified later to substitute other values and see if the model predictions are sensitive to these changes.

Entering data and equations moves the model from a visual, conceptual tool, to an analytical tool that can be used to make predictions about the patterns of disease under different scenarios. Vensim provides a number of **analysis tools** for first checking the logic and links within the model (Tree diagrams, causal loops, summary of all equations), and then for visualizing, tabulating and comparing results from running simulations (graphs, tables and comparing data from different runs).

### **Analysis Tools**



**Causes and Uses Trees** produce tree diagrams of the causal relationships for a particular variable, showing either the variables that feed into it (Causes) or those that it contributes to (Uses).

Loops gives information on the number of loops that pass through the selected variable.

**Document** shows the equations currently defined for the entire mode.

**Causes Graphs** shows small graphs of the results of a simulation for a selected variable and the other variables in its causal tree, together in a window.

**Graph** displays a larger graph of results for a selected variable (The control panel can be used to create custom graphs of any variables).

Tables provides the results of a simulation in a spreadsheet-like format.

These tools facilitate the final steps in creating a model: verifying and validating. Verifying includes careful assessment of correctness of the relationships and numbers in the model. An especially nice feature of Vensim is that you can view tiny graphs within each box variable to show how the population size changes as the model runs. This allows visual trouble-shooting. Models are then validated by generating predictions and comparing them to actual data to see how well the model mimics reality. If predictions and reality are far apart, this may illustrate a gap in our knowledge about the problem and lead to modifications of the model. Importantly, if the model is the logical expression of our understanding of the system and it doesn't lead to realistic conclusions, then our view of the problem may need to be adjusted.



STELLA<sup>®</sup>, Vensim<sup>®</sup> or other similar modeling programs can help us visualize a problem for discussion, quantify relationships, and generate predictions. We can link together and make explicit what we know, believe and perceive about a problem. This provides a valuable tool for addressing complex risk assessment problems, comparing alternative actions and aiding decision-making. The ease of use allows content experts, intimately involved with the problem, to create and modify models rather than to rely on external modeling specialists.

## **MOUNTAIN GORILLA**

**Participants:** Laura Hungerford, Patty Klein, Mike Cranfield, Genevieve Dumonceaux, Barbara Corso, Mark Atkinson, Shelley Alexander, Dominic Travis, Tom Meehan, Jim Else, Sue Brown

Step 1: Tell the story –

- Bwindi Park Gorillas
- Tracker & guides are the source
- Scabies originates from the local community i.e., one of the few diseases that does NOT stem from the trackers & guides
- The diseases of most concern for the gorillas is measles (affects population for a few months) and/or tuberculosis (continually affects population for years)

Step 2: Define the question –

- a) Risk of transmission of disease into the gorillas
- b) What is the likelihood of introducing Scabies into habituated gorilla population?
- c) What is the likelihood of introducing Cryptosporidia into habituated gorilla population?
- d) What is the likelihood of introducing measles into habituated gorilla population?
- e) What is the likelihood of introducing measles into habituated gorilla population?

Species of Concern: 1) Humans, 2) Gorillas, 3) Other (Habituated) Primates

Step 3: T = Tracker, G = Guide

Human movement = solid line arrows Gorilla = dashed arrows

- Cryptosporidia Vector



Procedures done at all points:

(a) At T & G/Community/Agricultural Activity Area – community health programs (basic), basic vet care

(b) At the Staging/Health Screening Area – educational program

Step 4 – Identify all potential hazards for Scabies:

Source Point	Hazard Risk Assessment
Trackers & Guides	Low
Local Community	High
Livestock/Crops	None
Staging/Health Screening Area	Low
Tourist Lodging	None
Gorilla Habitat	High

Step 4 - Scabies Transmission:

Low probability of transmission rate = dashed arrows Medium probability of transmission rate = solid line arrows High probability of transmission rate = double line arrows HT = Human Transmission/Movement GT = Gorilla Transmission/Movement



Step 4 – Identify all potential hazards for Cryptosporidia:

Source Point	Hazard Risk Assessment
Trackers & Guides	High
Local Community	Low
Livestock/Crops	High
Staging/Health Screening Area	Low
Tourist Lodging	Low
Gorilla Habitat	High

Step 4 - Cryptosporidia Transmission:

Low probability of transmission rate = dashed arrows Medium probability of transmission rate = solid line arrows High probability of transmission rate = double line arrows HT = Human Transmission/Movement GT = Gorilla Transmission/Movement



### ASSUMPTIONS/CONCLUSIONS:

- Not critically significant
- 4 Critical Control Points (CCPs) = Gorilla to Livestock; Livestock to T&G; staging area to gorillas; and T&G to Gorilla

Step 4 – Identify all potential hazards for Measles:

Source Point	Hazard Risk Assessment
Trackers & Guides	Low (> 0)
Local Community	Low (> 0)
Livestock/Crops	None
Staging/Health Screening Area	Low (> 0)
Tourist Lodging	Low (> 0)
Gorilla Habitat	None

Step 4 - Measles Transmission:

Low probability of transmission rate = dashed arrows Medium probability of transmission rate = solid line arrows High probability of transmission rate = double line arrows HT = Human Transmission/Movement GT = Gorilla Transmission/Movement



• Need to modify destination population

Step 4 – Identify all potential hazards for **Tuberculosis**:

Source Point	Hazard Risk Assessment
Trackers & Guides	Medium/Moderate
Local Community	Medium/Moderate
Livestock/Crops	Low
Staging/Health Screening Area	Medium/Moderate
Tourist Lodging	Low
Gorilla Habitat	None

Step 4 - Tuberculosis Transmission:

Low probability of transmission rate = dashed arrows Medium probability of transmission rate = solid line arrows High probability of transmission rate = double line arrows HT = Human Transmission/Movement GT = Gorilla Transmission/Movement



### ASSUMPTIONS/CONCLUSIONS:

- Extremely low risk of transmission
- No effective treatment  $\rightarrow$  significant health problem and morbidity/mortality
- Critical Control Point (CCP) is within the community and gorilla to gorilla

### **ACTIONS:**

### Community CP

- 1. Increase community and public health programs/education
- 2. Employee health programs
- 3. Increased livestock health programs/education
- 4. create buffer zone

#### Staging Area CP

- 1. Tracker and guide personal hygiene
- 2. Tourist personal hygiene

#### Habitat CP

- 1. Vaccination program
- 2. Treatment

### Stella Working Group Summary of Diagram

We developed this model as a working draft to allow the group to become familiar with the Stella program.

#### Set up:

Modeled as transmission of disease among gorillas, transmission among children of trackers, transmission among other children in the village, trackers used as route of exposure of measles to the gorillas.

#### **Assumptions:**

- 1. Gorilla contract measles (from humans and each other)
- 2. Humans act as fomites for the measles virus
- 3. Trackers developed immunity to measles as adults
- 4. Naive populations = all but trackers
- 5. Negligible impact of transmission tracker to tracker.
- 6. Closed populations
- 7. Random contacts
- 8. Random dispersal
- 9. Human adults that are not trackers are irrelevant (only trackers have contact with gorillas)
- 10. That all people infected recovered to immunity.

#### **Identifying data:**

Other kids = 5000 Trackers kids = 700 Trackers = 110 Gorilla population = 320 Noncontact gorillas = 60 Contact gorillas = 260 Vaccine programs as 98% efficacy for gorillas and people Contact rate sick child to child of 1:10 Contact rate for trackers to gorillas in contact groups of 1:20 Contact rate for noncontact gorillas to contact gorillas of 1:2

### Run and evaluate scenarios:

- 1. Measles goes through the population
- 2. Vaccinate just the trackers children
- 3. Vaccinate all children
- 4. Vaccinate gorillas only

### **Results of simulations:**

Vaccinating the gorillas only was the most effective way to minimize the incidence of measles in the gorilla population.

Reevaluate model again, and again and again.....

### **Summary:**

### Process of developing the model:

Identification of the problems to address.

Assemble a group individuals with diverse experience and training.

Employ someone who has a clue about Stella.

Begin to draw a conceptual picture of the problems you are addressing.

Develop assumptions.

Determine control points of the model.

Input data into the model (if possible real data used and otherwise bet estimates).

Run the model.

Evaluate the data, model and graphs resulting.

Reevaluate the appropriateness of the data entered and the relationships created.

Continue to refine and improve the model (to infinity).

### Question:

Does this approach provide benefit in exploring a complex problem?

### Answer:

Yes, it allows you to visualize the process, identify critical control points, and identify relationships that may not have been obvious, clearer idea of information needed to acquire.

### Question:

Can this approach give you a quantitative answer?

### Answer:

With more refinement and enough good data it may give you quantitative answers.

## Decision Tree Cost Analysis- Human → Gorilla measles

# **Description and Interpretation**

Three scenarios were assessed. The first involved an assumed prevalence in the in-contact human population of 10% and screening for the disease in these individuals is conducted by cursory inspection and observation of clinical signs only. The sensitivity of this method was assumed to be 50%. The cost was assumed to be zero.

Scenario	charlo one- physical inspection of trackers				
COST?	parameter	(p)	value	comment	
-	Prevalence	0.1	\$0		
+	Test	0.5	\$0	Cursory observation for signs of infection	
-	Viability	0.01	\$0		
-	transmission	0.5	\$0		
TOTAL		0.0002	\$0		

Scenario one- physical inspection of trackers

In the second scenario the screening test method used was a hypothetical PCR of clinical samples from every in-contact human. The sensitivity of this method was assumed to be 99%. Specificity was assumed to be 75%. Additional assumptions were that positive in-contact humans were excluded from the workforce. Based on this specificity the probability of a false positive individual is 0.225. This created the requirement for an additional 25 (rounded) individuals on the workforce and resulting labor cost increases. This was also based on a daily application of the method- may not be realistic at all. The effect of frequency of PCR testing (daily, weekly, quarterly, annually) on the sensitivity value of the method (not of the test) must be considered. The costs incurred were the test costs and the labor costs. The probability of disease (agent) introduction into the gorilla population was reduced to 0.00005 in this model.

Sechario	two-1 CR testi	ing of tracke	15	
COST?	parameter	(p)	value	comment
-	Prevalence	0.1	0	
+	Test	0.01	25 x 100	PCR oronasal swab
			75	Labor increase
-	Viability	0.01	0	
-	transmission	0.5	0	
TOTAL		0.00005	2575	Per test application
				(day?/week/quarter)
				Need to figure change in sensitivity
				due to change in testing frequency

Scenario two- PCR testing of trackers

Assumptions:

- 100 tracker/guards at \$3/day
- PCR test cost = \$20
- Increased sensitivity of PCR increases false + % so that (p) = 0.225 therefore workforce required increases

The third scenario implemented vaccination of the in-contact humans. Vaccine efficacy was assumed to be 99% and therefore prevalence dropped to 1%. Testing was limited to inspection for signs and therefore 50% efficacy was assumed. This approach dropped cost to a one-time investment of \$2.00 per vaccinate or initial \$200 outlay. The risk probability went to 0.000025.

COST?	parameter	(p)	value	comment
-	Prevalence	0.01	200	Vaccine efficacy reduces prevalence
				to 1%
+	Test	0.5	0	Inspection for signs
-	Viability	0.01	0	
-	transmission	0.5	0	
TOTAL		0.0000	200	One time cost
		25		

Scenario three- vaccination of trackers

Assumptions:

- Vaccine  $cost = \frac{2}{dose}$
- 100 trackers/guards vaccinated
- Vaccination reduces prevalence to 1%

## Recommendations

Based on these data and models it is clearly more cost beneficial to vaccinate the in-contact humans, however the use of PCR as screening test reduces risk of measles introduction five-fold. These conclusions appear to differ from those obtained using the Stella model, however, this disparity may be due to the complexity of the Stella model, that is- the addition of temporal considerations and additional variables which may effect the outcome.

INSERT ALBERTO'S VENSIM INSTRUCTIONS

# ANIMAL MOVEMENTS AND DISEASE RISK

A WORKBOOK

4th Edition

South Africa

18-21 November 2002

# HEALTH ASSESSMENT WORKSHEET FOR ANIMAL MOVEMENTS



### Health Assessment Worksheet for Animal Movements

### Introduction

This Worksheet provides a framework for developing quarantine and health screening protocols aimed at minimising disease risks during the movement of wildlife.

This process enables wildlife managers and veterinarians to consider the specific disease risk issues associated with each planned wildlife translocation and to communicate this, via the Worksheet, to all involved in the animal movement. For those people with access to the internet the Worksheet is available as a form on the CBSG website. This form can be completed directly on the computer and then forwarded to others via e-mail.

### **Situation-Specific Protocols**

The Worksheet process provides wildlife managers with the flexibility to develop a protocol consistent with available information, time and resources and specific to the circumstances associated with each individual animal movement.

It is recognised that resources for wildlife management are generally constrained and the data needed to make a quantitative risk assessment is often incomplete. The Worksheet enables managers to work within these constraints and begin the process of identifying gaps in knowledge which can be filled when opportunities arise. A fundamental underlying principle of this process is that some level of health screening is better than none.

### **Diseases of Concern**

Identifying which disease or health problems to screen animals for (Section 8 and Appendix 1 of the Worksheet) is the most difficult and potentially time consuming process in developing each protocol. Ideally this should involve a search of all relevant literature and all available unpublished material documenting the disease susceptibilities of the animal species affected by your animal movement. The extent of this search will depend, however, on the time and other resources available to you. You may, initially have to use only locally available records and plan to build on this as you are able. Having compiled your list in Appendix 1 you will then need to evaluate the significance of each health problem to this specific animal movement. This can be done using the process provided in Appendix 1 or you may wish to use one of the other CBSG disease risk assessment processes.

It is the intention of CBSG to collate Worksheet information into a central database. Over time this will provide a valuable information resource on diseases of concern to various animal groups.

### **Prioritising Health Screening Tests and Disease Control Measures**

Table 8 in the Worksheet includes a column in which you are asked to prioritise the health screening tests and disease control measures according to costs, time constraints and animal factors such as body size and stress of handling. This will be a valuable guide to all involved if any one of these factors becomes limiting.

### **Collecting Baseline Health Data**

In planning wildlife translocations give some consideration to the opportunity for collecting baseline health data and, if possible, publishing these. For most non-domestic species there is still very little normal health data available and this makes interpretation of data collected during pre-shipment health screens difficult to evaluate.

### **Quarantine Duration**

There are sometimes good reasons why an animal cannot be quarantined (e.g. time constraints in an emergency wildlife evacuation, excessive stress on the animal when confined etc) or when a less than ideal quarantine duration must be chosen. The Worksheet allows for these contingencies but requires that a reason is given for the duration chosen. This will be valuable to others when planning movements of the same species at a later date or under similar circumstances.

### **Diagnostic Sample Collection, Storage and Transport.**

In recognition of the fact that, in many cases, the persons collecting diagnostic samples from animals in the field will be non-veterinarians, a simple guide to collection, storage and transport of diagnostic samples is provided as an attachment to these notes. It is highly recommended that the techniques are practiced – preferably under veterinary supervision – before samples are collected in the field. The value of the samples will directly reflect the quality of the processes used to collect and handle them.

### Appendices

Appendices to the Worksheet include notes on qualitative and quantitative risk analysis methods, diagnostic test specificity and sensitivity and choice of sample size for developing baseline data.

# Health Assessment Worksheet Explanatory Notes

1. **Species to be moved**: Enter common and scientific name.

A separate sheet should be used for each species and each movement.

A "movement" begins at the original location(s) and ends at the final destination(s) of the animals. Some intermediary locations (e.g. a central quarantine site) may be involved. Quarantine location is noted on page 3 of the Worksheet.

- 2.a **From**: State current location(s) of animals to be moved (the source(s)).
- 2.b **To**: State the final location(s) to which the animals will be moved (the destination(s)).
- 3. **Total number of animals**: Specify total number of animals to be moved.
- 4. **Animal identification**: Each animal should be individually identified or a group number assigned where individual identification is not possible. (e.g. amphibians or schools of fish).

ID Number: specify the identification number or code for each individual or group

*ID type*: specify the type of identification marker used e.g.  $Trovan^{TM}$  or other microchip implant, leg band, ear tag, tattoo, etc. (<u>Note:</u> A means of permanent identification is highly recommended).

*Animal Origin*: List each animal's origin as **W** = Wild, **C** = Captive or **U** = Unknown. **B** = Both may be used for groups only.

*Age*: Enter age in years or, where unknown, classify as Juv = juvenile or Ad = adult*Sex*: List sex as M = male, F = female or U = unknown. B = Both may be used for groups only.

*Medical History*: If a medical history is available will it accompany this individual or group? Enter  $\mathbf{Y} = \mathbf{Y}$ es or  $\mathbf{N} = \mathbf{N}$ o. If medical history is not available write  $\mathbf{N}/\mathbf{A}$ .

*Comments*: Include any pertinent information such as significant disease history, contraceptive implants, neutered etc.

- 5.a Movement category: Check the box that describes this animal movement
- 5.b **Permits to move animals received**: Circle Yes or No as appropriate. In the box below, list all permits received and their expiration dates.
- 6.a **Project manager**: Enter the name of the person responsible for coordinating this animal movement and his/her telephone/fax numbers and email address.

- 6.b **Title, Institution**: Enter the Project Manager's position in the organisation and the name of the organisation
- Project veterinarian Enter the name of the designated veterinary advisor to this project and his/her telephone/fax numbers and email address.

#### 8. Health screen and control measures for diseases of concern:

To identify the diseases of concern for this movement, complete the table in Appendix 1 (see explanatory notes for this below). Available information, time and resources will determine the level of detail to be used in identifying potential diseases of concern.

*Disease/Health Problem*: List the diseases or health problems to be specifically addressed for <u>this</u> animal movement.

**Recommended diagnostic method or control measures**: Indicate the diagnostic method(s) (e.g. specific serological test, physical exam etc) or control measures (e.g. vaccination, control of parasite vectors etc) to be used to screen for, or prevent exposure to, the disease or health problem of concern.

*Priority*: Rank each disease/health problem according to its importance for <u>this</u> animal movement (where 1 = highest priority and 5 = lowest priority).

### 9. **Diagnostic methods and sample collection**:

For guidance on sample collection and handling refer to the attached: "*The collection, storage and transport of diagnostic samples from birds and reptiles*" or other suitable texts.

*Sample*: For each diagnostic method listed in table 8 above, list the type of sample to be collected (be specific eg. "Whole blood" or "serum" or "plasma" – not just 'blood')

*Test:* Enter the specific diagnostic test the sample is to be used for.

*Minimum sample amount:* Enter the <u>minimum</u> quantity (i.e. volume or weight) of sample to be collected for the specified test (check with laboratory if unsure).

*Sample collection date:* Enter the date the sample is to be collected. To minimise handling of animals this will usually be on the day of capture and/or transfer into quarantine.

*Sample to be forwarded to:* Insert the name of the testing facility and a contact name/address/telephone number. (Note: It is recommended that you contact your sample testing facility in advance to advise the date of sample collection and to ask for guidance on sample handling, storage and shipment. Also check any permit requirements for collection and shipment of samples).

- 10 **Prophylactic Treatments, Vaccinations and Control Measures**: List all treatments (including drug names, doses and route of administration) and vaccinations (including type of vaccine) to be given before animals are exposed to destination populations. All other disease control measures, such as disinfection of crates for transportation etc., should also be noted.
- 11. Location of quarantine: Geographic location of quarantine (e.g. zoo, park, specific island)
- 12. Facility: Specific building or site of quarantine.
- 13. **Quarantine duration**: Insert the dates the quarantine period begins and ends and total number of days the animals will be in quarantine. Provide an explanation for the duration of quarantine chosen or why quarantine is not to be used, if this is the case. This decision should consider disease factors, test requirements, and animal husbandry issues (e.g. stress in captivity). If no quarantine go to 16.
- 14. **Person supervising quarantine**: Insert the name of the person responsible for maintaining animal health and quarantine status. Include his/her contact details.
- 15. Quarantine equipment and set-up: Check appropriate boxes for the items to be organised.
- 16. Budget: Identify all costs associated with this animal movement project. This could include costs for personnel, equipment, animal feed, laboratory services, shipping of samples, veterinary fees and expenses etc. Where appropriate indicate which budget to debit these expenses to. If no specific budget for this movement go to 17.
- 17.a Results of health screen: For each animal itemise any positive or abnormal diagnostic test results. The project veterinarian should comment on the significance of these results in the far right column. Where no significant results were found write NSF (No Significant Findings).

- 17.b **Overall assessment and comment on results**: Veterinarian to comment on overall results including level of confidence in diagnostic tests and examinations.
- 18 **Movement recommendations**: Following review and discussion of the quarantine and health screening results check the appropriate box.
- 19 **Explanation and justification of animal movement recommendation**: Justify the recommendation and include the methods (qualitative and/or quantitative) used to evaluate the disease risks see other CBSG disease risk assessment tools.
- 20 **Follow up actions**: Itemise all actions to be taken to follow up this movement e.g. posttransfer monitoring, health surveillance of in-contact populations at destination sites, review of protocol including collection of baseline data to improve risk assessment data for future movements etc.
- 21 **Signed off by**: At the completion of the project the form should be signed off and dated by the Project Manager and Veterinarian.

### <u>Appendix 1:</u> Infectious and Non-Infectious Disease Susceptibilities of Species Affected by this Animal Movement

This table is provided to help compile as comprehensive a list of diseases as possible to which this and other relevant species are susceptible. Veterinary assistance in developing this list is strongly recommended.

A box is provided below the table to list the species **at source and destination sites** <u>most</u> <u>likely</u> to be affected by diseases that may be transmitted as a result of this animal movement. This includes in-contact people, wildlife and domestic animals.

#### **Explanation of table columns**:

*Disease/Problem*: Insert specific diseases or health problems (including genetic, environmental) to which these species are susceptible.

Using available knowledge and sources of information each disease should be ranked High (H), Medium (M) or (Low) against the characteristics in the next five columns. On this basis, a qualitative assessment of the relative risk associated with each disease can be made by assigning

it an <u>overall</u> High, Medium or Low ranking. A quantitative analysis using more sophisticated methods may be appropriate in some cases – see other CBSG disease risk assessment tools.

*Exposure threat*: the likelihood that an animal or population will be exposed and adversely affected by a pathogenic agent e.g. a microorganism, toxic agent, deleterious gene etc.

*Infectivity*: The characteristic of a microorganism that allows it to infect and subsequently survive and multiply within a susceptible host.

**Pathogenicity**: The host-specific ability of an agent to cause disease or otherwise induce pathological changes in a susceptible host

*Transmissibility*: The capacity for a disease agent to be transferred directly or indirectly from one susceptible host to another.

*Susceptibility*: The state of being readily affected by a pathogen; a lack of resistance to a pathogen.

*Disease of Concern? Y/N*: Insert Y (= yes) for any disease or health problem that receives an overall ranking of Medium or High. These are the diseases of concern to be listed in Section 8 of the Worksheet.

*Source(s) of information*: Number each source of information and reference this to a bibliography which should be attached to the Worksheet.

# Health Assessment Worksheet for Animal Movements

(Please re	efer to explanatory notes while completing this Worksheet)
1. SPECIES TO BE MOVED:	
2a. FROM:	2b. TO:
3. TOTAL NUMBER OF ANIMALS: _	
4. ANIMAL IDENTIFICATION: (attach add	ditional sheets if needed)
5a. MOVEMENT CATEGORY: Wild	to wild Wild to captivity Captivity to wild Captivity to captivity
5b. PERMITS TO MOVE ANIMALS RE	CEIVED YES (Circle one)
(List all permits and their expiry dates)	
	Tel.
6a. PROJECT MANAGER:	Fax
6b. TITLE, INSTITUTION:	E-mail:
	Tel.
7. PROJECT VETERINARIAN:	F-mail <sup>.</sup>

#### 8. HEALTH SCREEN & CONTROL MEASURES FOR DISEASES OF CONCERN TO THIS ANIMAL MOVEMENT (Diseases of Concern are as identified from Appendix 1)

#### 9. DIAGNOSTIC METHODS AND SAMPLE COLLECTION

For results refer to Section 17a on this form

\*Contact your sample testing facility to advise of date of sample collection and obtain guidance on sample handling, storage and shipment. Also check permit requirements for collection and shipment of samples.

### 10. PROPHYLACTIC TREATMENTS, VACCINATIONS AND CONTROL MEASURES

For documentation refer to individual animal records.

# **Quarantine Details** If no quarantine explain reason(s) in 13 below and go to 16.

. LO	CATION OF QUARANTINE:			
. FAG				
. QU	ARANTINE DURATION (Based on a	nimal mana	gement, diagnostic and disease criteria):	
Begi	ins (date)	Ends (date)	Total days:	
Spec	cify reason(s) for the duration below:			
DE				
	RSON SUPERVISING QUARANTINE			
Tel.	Fax.		E-mail	
Tel. 5. QU	Fax. JARANTINE EQUIPMENT AND SET	UP:	E-mail	
Tel. 5. QU Check	Fax. JARANTINE EQUIPMENT AND SET	UP:	E-mail Bags for waste disposal Feeding, watering and cleaning utensils	
Tel. 5. QU Check	Fax. Fax. JARANTINE EQUIPMENT AND SET "Quarantine - No Unauthorized Entry Sign" Insect/rodent traps/screens/baits Diagnostic sample collection, storage and transport equipment	UP: Check	E-mail Bags for waste disposal Feeding, watering and cleaning utensils Animal capture and restraint equipment	
Tel. 5. QU Check	Fax. Fax. Fax. Fax. Fax. JARANTINE EQUIPMENT AND SET "Quarantine - No Unauthorized Entry Sign" Insect/rodent traps/screens/baits Diagnostic sample collection, storage and transport equipment Lock for facility	UP: <i>Check</i>	E-mail Bags for waste disposal Feeding, watering and cleaning utensils Animal capture and restraint equipment Quarantine register	
Tel. 5. QU Check	Fax. Fax. Fax. Fax. Fax. Fax. Fax. Fax.	UP: <i>Check</i>	E-mail Bags for waste disposal Feeding, watering and cleaning utensils Animal capture and restraint equipment Quarantine register Animal caregiver personal health check	
Tel. 5. QU Check	Fax. Fax. Fax. Fax. Fax. Fax. Fax. Fax.	UP: <i>Check</i>	E-mail Bags for waste disposal Feeding, watering and cleaning utensils Animal capture and restraint equipment Quarantine register Animal caregiver personal health check Written quarantine protocol	
Tel. 5. QU Check	Fax. Fax. Fax. Fax. Fax. Fax. Fax. Fax.	UP: <i>Check</i>	E-mail Bags for waste disposal Feeding, watering and cleaning utensils Animal capture and restraint equipment Quarantine register Animal caregiver personal health check Written quarantine protocol Briefing of veterinarian with quarantine supervisor	

### 16. BUDGET: (If not required go to 17)

-	<u> </u>		<u>.</u>
### 17b. OVERALL ASSESSMENT AND COMMENTS ON RESULTS

\*If move delayed state time and condition for release:

### 19. EXPLANATION AND JUSTIFICATION FOR ANIMAL MOVEMENT RECOMMENDATION:

### 20. FOLLOW UP ACTIONS

21. SIGNED OFF BY:		DATE:	
	Project Manager		
		DATE:	
	Project Veterinarian		

### APPENDIX 1: INFECTIOUS AND NON-INFECTIOUS DISEASE SUSCEPTIBILITIES OF SPECIES AFFECTED BY THIS ANIMAL MOVEMENT\*

(List below potential in-contact wildlife, domestic animals and humans. Veterinary assistance is strongly recommended for developing this list)

Disease/Problem	Exposure threat	Infectivit	Pathogenicit	Transmissibilit	Susceptibili	Disease of Concern? Y/N	Source(s) of information

\*For each disease rank High (H), Medium (M) or Low (L) for infectivity, pathogenicity, transmission and susceptibility. Select as "disease of concern" if, overall` the veterinarian ranks the disease or health problem as a Moderate to High risk based on this, or a more quantitative, analysis. \*\* Number each source of information and reference this to a bibliography which should be attached to this document

Species potentially affected by this movement:

110

# **Disease Risk Assessment for Animal Movements Database**

(created by John S. Williams, CBSG)

This database is available electronically on the enclosed CD.

	3, 1 중 접 7   🖍   🗠 🐻 📾 🍙 - 🛛 -		ease Risk essment vnimal Movements	Conservation Breeding Specialist Group Species Survival Commission UCN – The World Conservation Union Copyright IJCN/ SSC/CESG - 2002 Vet. 1.4 2/02
🖉 Assessments   Eile Edit ⊻iew İnsert F <u>o</u> rmat <u>B</u> ecords Iools <u>W</u> indow <u>H</u> elp	<b>⊻ -  ⊒</b>   <b>3</b> C ♥ % 15 E ≶ ∞   ∞   §   3	Disease Risk Assessment of Animal Movements File Find Add Beport Utilities Quit Edit New Beport	Dise Ass for A	AUCKLAND ZOOO ZDOO Department of Conservation Te Papa Ataubai

Assessments	XIDIT
lie Edit View Insert Format Records Iools Window Help 	0
五、七日(〇) は、く 」 ゆ 「司 王 (1) ~ 1 (1) (1) (1) (1) (1) (1) (1) (1) (1) (	۲ ۲
pecies Tree Kangaroo 5 Number to move 5	5 Close
irom Dountry Papua New Guinea VI to Country USA VI at date	6/1/2001
om Place Lae University Zoo To Place National Zoo, Washington DC Category Captiv	Captivity to captivity
Staff and Org   Animals (list)   Health Concerns   Samples   Prophylaxis   Quarantine   Budget Items   Overall Assess.   Recommended in the set of the set	tecomm.   Appendix: Disease list
fanager Fini	
Institution National Museum of Papua New Guinea Tel Fax	
Street Email Email	
City Lae State Zip Country Papua New C	New Guinea
Veterinarian	
First Last Title	
Institution Tel Fax	
City Email Email	
otes on staff	
Permits Permits to Move Animals received 🗹	
List all permits Dept of Natural Resources export permit - expires November, 2001 and expiration dates	
orm View FLTR CAPS	CAPS NUM CAPS

112

File Edit View Insert Format Records Tools Window Halp	
送 + 🖃 (볼 0, ♥^	
Disease Risk Worksheet - Movement of Species	
Species Tree Kangaroo Close Close	I
From Country Papua New Guinea I To Country USA Start date 6/1/2001	
From Place Lae University Zoo To Place National Zoo, Washington DC Category Captivity to captivity 🚽	
Staff and Org Animals (list)   Health Concerns   Samples   Prophylaxis   Quarantine   Budget Items   Overall Assess.   Recomm.   Appendix: Disease list	
ID ID Type Animal Drigin Age Age/Type Sex MedHistory ►	
Veterinary Assessment healthy	
Individual Animal negative Health Assessment Result	
Notes/Comments	
Veterinary Assessment	
Individual Animal Health Assessment Result	
Record: 14 4 1 • 11 • 11 • 1 • 1 • • 1 • • 1	٦Þ,
Furn View	

Assessments	
Eile Edit <u>V</u> iew Insert F <u>o</u> rmat <u>B</u> ecords Iools <u>W</u> indow <u>H</u> elp	
또 · E   올 G ♡ ½ & & & & & & & & & & & & & & & & & &	
Disease Risk Worksheet - Movement of Species	
Species Tree Kangaroo 5 Number to move 5	Close
From Country Papua New Guinea J To Country USA Start date 6/1/2001	1/2001
From Place Lae University Zoo To Place National Zoo, Washington DC Category Captivity to captivity	o captivity 🚽
Staff and Org   Animals (list)   Health Concerns   Samples   Prophylaxis   Quarantine   Budget Items   Overall Assess.   Recomm.   Appendix           Disease / Health Problem         Recommended Diagnostic Method/ Control Measures         Priority	Appendix: Disease list
Tree Kangaroo Problem number 1 test for bacteria	
	į
Record: IN A 2 P PI PW of 2	]
	_
Form View FLTR NUM	MUM
	т. . т.

angaroos:
X
Tree
pD
lovin
B
for
entry
data
le
samp
◄

rset Farmat Becords Jook Window Hep <ul> <li></li></ul>	ments	
Image: Solution of Species       Image: Solution of Species       Image: Solution of Species         Indertoo       Indertoo       Image: Solution of Species         Indertoo       Indertoo       Indertoo       Statt date       E/1/2001         Indertoo       In Place       In Place       Indertoo       Statt date       E/1/2001         Indertoo       In Place       Internal Zoo, Washington DC       Category Captivity to ca	sert F <u>o</u> rmat <u>B</u> ecords <u>I</u> ools <u>W</u> indow <u>H</u> elp	
Asheet - Movement of Species       Number to move       5       Close          endratroo       In Country       USA       Number to move       5       Close          ew Guinea       In Country       USA       Start date       6/1/2001       Close          ersity Zoo       In Place       National Zoo, Washington DC       Category Captivity to captivity           iets (list)       Health Concerns       Samples       Prophylaxis       Quarantine       Budget Items       Overall Assess.       Recomm.       Appendix: Disease list         Methods       and Samples       Prophylaxis       Quarantine       Budget Items       Overall Assess.       Recomm.       Appendix: Disease list         Sample I cest       Minimum Amt       Date       Sample forwarded to:              aloo)       test1       3 milligrams       1/1/2001       General Labs	호 방   ※ 🖻 🗟 💉 🗠   逸 👌 값t   장 둽 🔽 👪 🕨 🕅	🐨 🖬 🗃 - 🕄 -
(andaroo       Number to move       5       Close          Vew Guinea       To County       USA       Start date       £/1/2001         Vew Guinea       To Place       National Zoo, Washington DC       Category       Captivity to captivity          versity Zoo       To Place       National Zoo, Washington DC       Category       Category       E/1/2001         mals (list)       Health Concerns       Samples       Prophylaxis       Quarantine       Budget Items       Overall Assess.       Recomm.       Appendix: Disease list         C Methods and Sample Collection       Sample Items       Overall Assess.       Recomm.       Appendix: Disease list         Garool       test1       3 milligrams       1/1/2001       General Labs       I/1/1/2001	rksheet - Movement of Species	
New Guinea       To County       USA       Start date       6/1/2001         iversity Zoo       To Place       National Zoo, Washington DC       Category       Captivity to captivity         imals (list)       Health Concerns       Samples       Prophylaxis       Quarantine       Budget Items       Overal Assess.       Recomm.       Appendix Disease list         c       Methods       and       Sample       Collection       Sample       Collection       Sample       Intrimum Amt       Date       Sample       Intrimum Amt       Date       Sample       Intrimum Amt       Intrimum Amt       Intrimum Amt       Intrimum Amt       Intrinum Amt       Intrintrinum Amt       Intrinum Amt <td>(angaroo</td> <td>Aumber to move 5 Close</td>	(angaroo	Aumber to move 5 Close
iversity Zoo To Place Altional Zoo, Washington DC Category Captivity to captive stationals (list) Health Concerns Samples Prophylaxis Quarantine Budget Items Overall Assess. Recomm. Appendix: Disease list Camples and Sample Collection Sample Collection Sample Collection Collection Sample forwarded to: Labs Sample Test Minimum Am Date Sample forwarded to: Lest Minimum Am Date Sample Items Internation (General Labs)	New Guinea - To Country USA	➡ Start date 6/1 / 2001
imals (list) Health Concerns Samples Prophylaxis Quarantine Budget Items Overall Assess. Recomm Appendix: Disease list C Methods and Sample Collection Sample Test Minimum Amt Date Sample forwarded to: paroo) test1 3 milligrams 1/1/2001 General Labs	iversity Zoo To Place National Zoo, Washington DC	Category Captivity to captivity 🛛
c Methods and Sample Collection Sample Test Minimum Amt Date Sample forwarded to: garoo) test1 3 miligrams 1/1/2001 General Labs	imals (list)   Health Concerns Samples   Prophylaxis   Quarantine   Budget Items   Dv	verall Assess. Recomm. Appendix: Disease list
garoo) test 3 miligrams 1/1/2001 General Labs	ic Methods and Sample Collection	
	ngaroo) [test] [3 milligrams [1/1/2001] [Ger	mpre rorwarded to.
	2 <b>P PI PE OF 2</b>	
		FLTR
2 > 1 + 1 > 4 2		

🛃 Assessments	
Eile Edit View Insert Format Becords Iools Window Help	
K + 日   G V * * * * * * * * *   ~   S * * * V * V * *	* 💌 📷 🖬 🗃 - 🛛 -
Disease Risk Worksheet - Movement of Species	
Species Tree Kangaroo	Number to move 5 Close
From Country Papua New Guinea J To Country USA	Start date 6/1/2001
From Place Lae University Zoo To Place National Zoo, Washington DC	Category Captivity to captivity
Staff and Org   Animals (list)   Health Concerns   Samples Prophylaxis   Quarantine   Budget Items   (	ems   Overall Assess.   Recomm.   Appendix: Disease list
Treatment Notes       Vaccination       Vaccination       Vaccination       Uters       Other Control       Dassures:	
Form View	FLTR

116

바 34 장 둽 <b>전 44 b* 1</b> 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	Number to move       E       Close       Close         UISA       Start date       E/1/2001       E         National Zoo, Washington DC       Category Captivity to captivity       Image: Close       E         Nylaxis       Quarantine       Budget Items       Overal Assess.       Recomm       Appendix: Disease list         Number of days       0       Fax       E       E       E       E         umber of days       0       Fax       E       E       E       E       E         unber of days       0       Fax       E </th <th></th>	
Elie Edit <u>V</u> iew Insert F <u>o</u> rmat <u>B</u> ecords <u>T</u> ools <u>W</u> indow <u>Help</u> <u> 또 - I II ( 3</u> 0, 양   兆 11 12 12 12 12 12 12 12 12 12 12 12 12	Disease Fisk Worksheet - Movement of Species         Species       Tree Kanqaroo       Numb         From       Each       To Country       USA       Numb         From       Prophylaxis       Quarantine       Budget Items       Overal         Facility       Lee University.Zoo       To Country       USA       Overal       Operation       Image: Component Concerns       Samples       Prophylaxis       Quarantine       Budget Items       Overal         Facility       Lee PNG       Number of days       Quarantine       Budget Items       Overal         Start Date       1/1/2001       End Date       Number of days       Outanatine       Budget Items       Overal         Start Date       1/1/2001       End Date       Number of days       Outanatine       Budget Items       Overal         Start Date       1/1/2001       End Date       Number of days       Outanatine       Budget Items       Overal         Start Date       1/1/2001       End Date       Number of days       Outanatine       Budget Items       Overal         Start Date       1/1/2001       End Date       Number of days       Outanatine       Budget Items       Overal         Start Date       1/1/2001       End Date	Form View

×				•									٦	1
		□ + [2] +		e 5 Close	e 6/1/2001	iy Captivity to captivity ▼	Recomm. Appendix: Disease list	1			•	1		MUM
		🛔 >> >× 🖄 😰 🛅		Number to move	Start date	ington DC Catego	Budget Items 0verall Assess.	Cost	\$1,000.00	\$0:00				FLTR
	ids <u>I</u> ools <u>W</u> indow <u>H</u> elp	효 🖉 🛛 🐍 24 24 🎙 접 🔽	nt of Species		To Country USA	To Place National Zoo, Washi	ncerns   Samples   Prophylaxis   Quarantine					▶×1 of 2		
🌽 Assessments	Eile Edit <u>V</u> iew Insert F <u>o</u> rmat <u>R</u> ecor	<b>k ·   9</b>   <b>3 b c b c</b>	Disease Risk Worksheet - Movemer	Species Tree Kangaroo	From Country Papua New Guinea	From Place Lae University Zoo	Staff and Org Animals (list) Health Cor	Number Budget Item Description	1 Cages (tree kangaroo)	Inumber)		Record: 14 4 2 2 2 11	4	Form View 110

× <b>™ ™ × ×</b>	Number to move 5 Close C	FLTR NUM
▲ Assessments File Edit View Insert Format Records Iools Window Help   送 + 日 ④ 広 ∜ 為 哈 臣 ダ わ 優 登 裂 裂 腎 一 ▼ ●	Disease Risk Worksheet - Movement of Species         Species       Tree Kangaroo         Form       Fapua New Guinea       I o County         From Place       Lae University Zoo       T o Place         From Place       Lae University Zoo       T o Place         Staff and Org       Animals (fist)       Health Concerns       Samples         Prophylawii       Quarantine       Bu         Overall       Assessment       Assessment	▲  Form View

Kangaroos:
Tree
noving
y for 1
entry
data
sample
◀

				•														•	
				Close	5/1/2001	to captivity 💌	Appendix: Disease list											-	MUM
				iove 5	date	egory <mark>Captivity</mark>	ss. Recomm.				I								
I	d 9			Number to m	Start	Cat	Overall Asses				l		ign [	n sign					FLTR
I	3				L	gton DC	Budget Items				l		ate Manager s	ate Veterinariar					
I	2 2				L	al Zoo, Washin	Quarantine	Ī	P		l			Ĩ					
	w <u>H</u> elp	24 A4			untry <mark>USA</mark>	Place Nationa	Prophylaxis				l								
	Lools Windo	2 2 2	f Species		JTo Co	Tof	ns Samples	es			l								
	at <u>B</u> ecords		Movement o				Health Concer	itine 🗹 Y	l with move		l								
	Insert Forma	<u>ୁ</u> ୬ ଥି	/orksheet -	e Kangaroo	a New Guinea	Jniversity Zoo	Animals (list)   H	Quaran	Proceed										
ssessments	: Edit View		ease Risk W	scies Tree	m untry <mark>Papu</mark>	n Place Lae L	aff and Org   A		love Recom	tove Concerns	ushifinahinn		ollowup		lotes on Delay				n View
A N	Eile 2	¥	Dis	Spe	۴Ö	Fron	Ste		2	2		>			2				For

Assessments
Eile Edit <u>V</u> iew Insert F <u>o</u> rmat <u>B</u> ecords Iools <u>W</u> indow <u>H</u> elp
≝ + 日   @ G ♥   % ┗ E 彡   >   %   34   ♥ 점 ♥ M   ► ♥ @ Ē @ + Q .
Disease Risk Worksheet - Movement of Species
Species Tree Kangaroo
From Country Papua New Guinea J To Country USA Start date 6/1/2001
From Place Lae University Zoo To Place National Zoo, Washington DC Category Captivity to captivity
Staff and Org Animals (list) Health Concerns Samples Prophylaxis Quarantine Budget Items Overall Assess. Recomm. Appendix: Disease list
▶ Disease Tuberculosis (tree kangaroo)
Infectivity High ( >25 % ) Jest Method Sensitivity
Pathogenicity Medium (10 % - 25 % - Trest Method Specificity
ExposureThreat High (>25 %) J
Transmissibility High (>25 %) 🚽 Uther Species Effected
Susceptibility Low (<10%)
Sources
Arhrax
Disease Concern /
Pethonewickin High ( 25 % ) I est Method Sensitivity
Fraungementy Fright (22.3 × ) Test Method Specificity
Exposure I rieat, Meauum (10 % - 23 % - Transmissibility (1 m. ( - 10 % ) - Other Species Effected
riensininsi Low (× 10 ≈) →
Sources
* Disease of concern?
Record: 14 1 1 1 1 1 1 2 4

121

×													
				ग								•	MUN
		<b>۱</b>		opunyi								-	1 S
		• 🕅		Cance									CAF
				Next									
		* 1											
					U								
	eb	TZ 1		nario					F				
	⊻indow <u>H</u>	<b>₹</b> N		int Sce			1						
	Iools V	2		очете									
	<u>R</u> ecords	8	.e	New M	L					nals: <mark>0</mark>			
	t F <u>o</u> rmat	≫6  }	it Scena	Enter I	.;;	/: tart mov	lace	8	if Move	er of Anin			
nts	iew Inser	4	dovemen		Specie	Country Date: si	From P	To Pla	Type o	Numbe			
ssessme	Edit Vi	•	er New h	(umber)									n View
A S	File	2	Ente	.utoN								*	Form

# ANIMAL MOVEMENTS AND DISEASE RISK

A WORKBOOK

4th Edition

**South Africa** 

18-21 November 2002

HEALTH ASSESSMENT WORKSHEET MANUAL

**Test Considerations Appendix** 

# Appendix for the Quarantine Health Sheet

### Considerations when testing small populations for disease

Disease can play an important role in regulating the distribution and abundance of wildlife populations. The effects of avian malaria on Hawaiian forest birds and canine distemper on black-footed ferrets are two examples that demonstrate the role that disease can play in pushing populations toward extinction. The presence or absence of disease in a population is an important consideration when determining the risks associated with animal movements. Diagnostic testing is needed to determine the disease status of animals in a population. The test results are crucial and are needed by managers and veterinarians to make appropriate decisions regarding animal movements and to provide effective health care for individuals in the population. In order to accurately assess the risks one should strive to obtain results that most accurately reflect the disease status of the population. There are several factors that influence the outcome of the results: the number of animals being tested (the sample size), the composition of the sample (for example the age distribution of the individuals in the sample population) and the quality of the tests being used. Good sampling technique requires that 1) the animals selected for testing are representative of the population as a whole and that 2) an appropriate number of animals are tested to ensure that if the disease is present it will be detected. These techniques assume that a large population is available from which one can select a certain number of animals to sample. It also assumes that one has the ability to randomly select the composition of the sample. Chronic low levels of disease can be present in populations but may go undetected if sampling methods are not appropriate. When dealing with captive and translocation populations these assumptions rarely hold true as the captive or translocation population is usually the sample population.

### Sample size and composition

Even if we define our sample population as the entire captive or translocation population, the sample can not be considered random and the sample size will be less than optimal. These limitations do not diminish the importance of or the need for diagnostic testing rather these factors simply need to be considered when interpreting test results and assessing the risks associated with animal movements.

Does the composition of the sample population bias the test results in anyway? Are there peculiarities in the sample population such as the sex ratio, age distribution or genetic makeup of the sample that could affect the outcome of the results? For example if the diagnostic test tests for antibody titers to a specific disease but sufficient titers generally do not develop until an animal is 2 or 3 years of age a sample population comprised of animals that are 1-4 years of age may bias your results. If all individuals in the population test negative, one must consider whether there is still a probability that some animals in the population may be harboring disease.

Sample size is important because it influences the probability of detecting disease if disease is present. While we may lack the ability to change the sample size, understanding the importance of sample size is important because it influences the outcome of the test results. When done correctly sampling can yield an accurate estimate of disease status of the population (i.e. is the disease present in the population and if it is what percentage of the animals is affected?).

### Quality of the diagnostic test

Another important factor when testing for disease is the quality of the diagnostic test. The quality of a test is determined by its ability to distinguish between those animals that are diseased and those that are not. The quality of the diagnostic test should be considered when selecting the test (or tests) to be performed and the results must be interpreted in light of the quality of the test. The sensitivity of a test is defined as the ability of a test to identify correctly those individuals who have the disease (animals who are true positives). For example, in a flock of 150 birds 100 birds have disease X, if we test the flock and 80 of the infected birds are correctly identified as positive and a positive identification was missed in 20 of the infected birds then the test has a sensitivity of 80%. The specificity of a test is defined as the ability of the test to correctly identified as negative and a negative identification was missed in 25 of birds are correctly identified as negative and a negative identification was missed in 25 of birds then the test has a specificity of 50%.

In many cases sensitivity and specificity will not be available for wildlife species and may need to be estimated based on the sensitivity and specificity of the test in domestic animals. Information about sensitivity and specificity may be available directly from the manufacturer or in the manufacturers information provided with the test, or in articles by independent researchers who have evaluated the efficacy of the test in different species.

Note: The following equation/example is the method I suggested a pharmaceutical company use for determining appropriate sample size (Noordhuizen, et al) based on the desired probability of detecting disease. The equation can also be rearranged to determine the maximum prevalence or number of positives (d) in a population given that all individuals (n) tested negative. Unfortunately in a captive or translocation situation the sample size (n) is equal to the population size (N) if you set n = N the equation doesn't work because you can get a probability of detecting disease which is >1.

# Equation for determining the probability of detecting disease based on sample size and test quality.

The likelihood of detecting disease in a population if disease is present is influenced by a number of factors including the total population size, the sample size, the sensitivity and specificity of the diagnostic tests being used, the expected prevalence of the disease in the population, and the "desired probability" of detecting the disease. Choosing a desired probability 0.95 or 95% means that if the disease is present, there is a 95% probability of detecting it and a 5% chance that it will not be detected. The following equation is one method of determining appropriate sample size (Noordhuizen, et al).

 $n = [1-(1-P)^{1/d}] [N-((d-1)/2)]$ 

n= sample size

P= probability of detecting at least one case if the disease is present

d= number of detectable cases in the population. If the diagnostic test being used does not have 100% sensitivity then d is equal to the number of infected animals multiplied by the sensitivity of the test. This assumes that no falsepositives are present or that they are ruled out by confirmatory tests

### **N**= population size

For example, suppose that we want to detect whether or not a flock of 300 birds (N=300) is infected with a specific disease. If the disease is present, then we suspect that the prevalence of disease is about 5% (i.e. about 5% of the birds will be infected) and the diagnostic test being used has a sensitivity of 100% (d=15 birds). We want to be 95% certain of detecting the disease (P=.95) which means that there is a 5% chance that we will be in error and will not detect the disease even if the disease is present. Based on the above calculation the required minimum sample size is 53 birds or 18% of the population.

$$n = (1 - (1 - .95)^{1/15}) \times (300 - (15 - 1)/2) = 53$$

If we assume that the test has a sensitivity of only 70% then it will detect 70% of the positive birds ( $d=15 \times .7= 11$  birds). Based on the above calculation the required sample size increases to 70 birds or 23% of the flock.

$$n = (1-(1-.95)^{1/11}) \times (300-(11-1)/2) = 70$$

The following table based on a flock size of 300 birds demonstrates how the required sample size changes as the prevalence of disease (Column A) changes. Columns C, D, and E give the minimum required sample sizes at different probabilities of detection.

Total number	Column A	Column B	Column C	Column D	Column E
flock	disease in the	diseased	required to	required to	required to
neen	population	animals in the	have a 90%	have a 95%	have a 99%
		population	probability of	probability of	probability of
			detecting	detecting	detecting
			disease	disease	disease
300	0	0	300	300	300
300	0.001	0.3	300	300	300
300	0.01	3	160	189	235
300	0.05	15	42	53	77
300	0.1	30	21	27	41
300	0.2	60	10	13	20
300	0.3	90	6	8	13
300	0.4	120	5	6	9
300	0.5	150	3	4	7
300	0.6	180	3	3	5
300	0.7	210	2	3	4
300	0.8	240	2	2	3
300	0.9	270	1	2	3
300	1	300	1	1	2



**<u>Ref: Kahn, H.A. and Sempos, C.T.</u> 1989.** Statistical Methods in Epidemiology, Oxford University Press, pp 12-42 and 230-244.

Noordhuizen, J.P.T.M., Frankena, K., van der Hoofd, C.M., and Gratt, E.A.M., 19 Application of Quantitative Methods in Veterinary Epidemiology pp 31-69.

# ANIMAL MOVEMENTS AND DISEASE RISK

A WORKBOOK

4th Edition

**South Africa** 

18-21 November 2002

# HEALTH ASSESSMENT WORKSHEET MANUAL

Sample Collection Appendix

# THE COLLECTION,

# STORAGE AND TRANSPORT OF

# **DIAGNOSTIC SAMPLES**

# FROM

# **BIRDS AND REPTILES**

Compiled by: Richard Jakob-Hoff, B.V.M.S. Veterinarian, Auckland Zoo Wildlife Health and Research Centre, Private Bag, Grey Lynn, Auckland

For : New Zealand Department of Conservation

July, 1999

## **CONTENTS**

Introduction.	
I. Blood - Summary	
III. Facces - Summary	
III. Ectoparasites - Summary	
IV. Bacterial Culture Swabs - Summary	
V. Post Mortem Tissues - Summary	
I. Blood Samples	
When to take samples	
How much to take	
Blood collection sites	
Physical restraint	
Blood collection technique	
Handling the fresh blood sample	
Labelling	
Stopping the bleeding	
Anticoagulant	
Storage of blood samples	
Transport of blood samples	
II. Faecal Samples Selecting the	
sample	
Special collection techniques	
Faecal sample storage	
Faecal sample transport	
III Fatar anaita Samulas	
Ectoparasite collection	
techniques	

Ectoparasite storage	22
Ectoparasite	22
transport	
IV. Bacterial Culture Swabs	
Collection techniques for bacterial	22
cultures	
Storage of culture	23
swabs	
Transport of culture	23
swabs	
V. Post Mortem (Necropsy) Sample Collection	
Before you	24
start	
External	24
examination	
Internal	24
examination	
Examining the	25
organs	
Taking samples for laboratory	25
examination	
Storage of necropsy	25
samples	
Transport of necropsy	26
samples	
Appendix I: Glossary of terms	27
Appendix II: Equipment for diagnostic sample	28
collection	
Appendix III: The value of blood as a diagnostic tool	
	30
References	32

# **INTRODUCTION**

These notes are intended to provide guidance to DOC staff faced with the need to collect diagnostic samples from native birds and reptiles in the field. This will usually be associated with a health screening or wildlife health surveillance project.

### The role of the veterinarian

It is essential that a veterinarian with some background with bird or reptile medicine is consulted during the planning phase of your health screening or surveillance project. He/she will advise you on which diagnostic samples will be most valuable for your purposes and will interpret the laboratory results. With some prior notification many vets will also be happy to show you the correct technique for collecting samples.

To get the maximum value from your sample it must be collected, stored and transported in the right way and within the specified time frame. *You should not go into the field collecting samples before you are trained to do so and have had the opportunity to practice*. This is particularly the case with blood and post mortem sample collection.

### How the information has been organised

For easy reference a summary of the main points you need to remember is provided overleaf.

This is followed by a more detailed explanation of the methods of sample collection, storage and transport.

Additional information - including a glossary of terms - is provided in a series of appendices at the end of the booklet.

### I. BLOOD - SUMMARY

	BIRDS	REPTILES
Max. Volume to Collect:	1% body weight (g)	0.5 - 0.8% body weight (g)
	(1g = 1ml)	(1g = 1ml)
Collection Sites:	• Right neck vein (jugular)	Tail veins
	<ul><li>Inside leg vein (metatarsal)</li><li>Wing vein (brachial)</li></ul>	

### Table 2: Blood containers and their storage and transport

Sample type	Purpose	Container type	Storage	Transport
1. Blood smear	To assess general health including presence of anaemia, inflammation, infection, blood parasites etc.	Glass microscope slides with frosted ends	Air dried. Once air dried can be fixed with absolute methanol for 5 seconds, rinsed with water and air dried again - only necessary if > 4 days delay to lab. DO NOT REFRIGERATE	Plastic slide transport containers. These keep the slides dust-free, dry and prevent one slide touching another.
2. Very small blood volume (a few drops)	To measure packed cell volume (PCV) and total protein. Used to monitor general health, anaemia and dehydration	Glass capillary tube - range in volume from 9 - 60µl	Non-storable - must be centrifuged and processed in the field. Requires microcentrifuge and refractometer.	Not applicable
3. Serum or Plasma	For biochemistry tests to check health of internal organs and fluids. Also for measurement of antibodies against specific disease organisms.	Red-top (plain) microtainer (volume ≤ 0.5ml)	Clot at room temp. for 20 minutes then refrigerate. CAN BE FROZEN if centrifuged and separated from cells first.	In zip-lock bag within a box. Use chilly bin with freezer pack or ice blocks if delay to lab $> 24$ hours. Get to lab within 48hrs max.
4. Whole Blood	More accurate and comprehensive assessment of items listed under 1 and 2 above.	Purple top (EDTA) (preferable) or green top (heparin) microtainer. (volume 0.2 - 0.5ml)	Refrigerate/keep cool immediately. <b>DO NOT FREEZE</b> .	As for serum or plasma.

### II. FAECES - SUMMARY

Sample type	Purpose	Container type	Storage	Transport
Faeces	Examination for parasitic worms (nematodes, tapeworms, flukes, coccidia etc.)	Clean plastic pottle. Can add equal volume of 5% formalin mixed thoroughly if unable to keep cool or delays > 3 weeks likely.	Refrigerate until sent to lab.	Place labelled containter in zip-lock BioHazard bag. To lab within 24 hours is preferred but even 3-4 week old samples can yield <u>some</u> results if kept chilled.
Faeces (very fresh)	Examination for fragile parasitic protozoa (e.g. <i>Cryptosporidia</i> , <i>Trichomonas</i> , <i>Giardia</i> )	Clean plastic pottle.	Send to lab immediately	As above. To lab within 1 hour is essential for these organisms. Refrigerate if any delay.
Faecal smear	For visual examination of gut bacterial flora, protozoa and presence of abnormal micro- organisms (e.g. yeasts).	Glass microscope slide with frosted end.	DO NOT REFRIGERATE. Air dry and keep at room temp. Can be heat fixed for longer preservation by passing slowly over a butane flame 5 times	In plastic slide container as for blood smears.
Cloacal flush	Any of the above if fresh faeces not available	Sterile glass or plastic pottle or tube.	Refrigerate/keep cool until sent to lab.	As for faecal/cloacal swab. Some protozoa may not be detectable after 1 -24 hours.

 Table 3: Faecal collection, storage and transport

### III ECTOPARASITES - SUMMARY

Sample type	Collection	Storage	Transport
Ticks	Carefully pull off host with fine tweezers making sure mouthparts detach as well. Leaving mouthparts in skin can cause localised infection. A dab of alcohol on the tick can make removal easier.	Place in glass screw-top container containing 70% alcohol and 5% glycerol. Clearly label with 1) host species, 2) geographic area collected from, 3) body site collected from (head, ears, etc.), 4) date of collection and 5) name of collector.	Place container in plastic zip-lock bag, then outer solid container with packing to prevent breakage. To lab at your convenience.
Lice, mites	If unable to collect individuals with tweezers can <u>briefly</u> place body (not head!) of animal in a plastic bag containing a cotton ball lightly soaked in chloroform. Parasites will fall off and can be collected from bag.	As above	As above

 Table 4: Collection, storage and transport of ectoparasites (ticks, lice etc.)

### IV. BACTERIAL CULTURE SWABS - SUMMARY

Table 5: Coll	lection, storage	and transport of	of swabs for	<b>bacterial culture</b>
---------------	------------------	------------------	--------------	--------------------------

Sample type	Purpose	Container type	Storage	Transport
Sample type Faeces Cloacal flush Cloacal swab Choanal swab (see below for collection technique).	Purpose To identify gut or respiratory tract bacteria by culture	Container type Paediatric swab in Stewart's transport medium +/- charcoal (latter preferable if transport delays > 24 hrs likely) OR	Storage Refrigerate/keep cool until sent to lab.	Transport Place labelled swab in zip-lock BioHazard bag and courier bag in an outer container. If delivery delays likely (e.g. weekend) keep refrigerated or add ice to transport container.
		Sterile screw-cap pottle.		

### V. POST MORTEM TISSUES - SUMMARY

Sample type	Purpose	Container type	Storage	Transport
Preserved body organs including muscle, skin, bone etc. Take a small sample of all tissues. Samples of 5mm <sup>3</sup> should be taken. If there is an obvious abnormality include this with an adjacent area of normal looking tissue.	Microscopic exam for signs of disease (histology)	Plastic container with screw cap containing 10% buffered formalin. The volume of formalin must be at least 10 times the volume of tissues. Clearly label with 1) Species 2) ID of animal 3) geographic area in which corpse was found 4) the date and 5) your name.	Tissues in formalin will last indefinitely and do not need refrigeration. However, formalin fumes are highly toxic so use only in well ventilated areas, seal containers tightly and store securely away from food, drink and areas of human or animal occupancy.	Seal container in a zip- lock plastic BioHazard bag. Place Wildlife Submission Form and a copy of your completed post-Necropsy Form (see below) in side pocket. Place bag in sturdy container with packing and courier to lab at your convenience.
Unpreserved tissues. Collect only if carcase is fresh. Take selected organs, particularly, liver, lung, kidney and any organ that appears diseased. A fairly large sample is useful	To look for and identify disease- causing bacteria in the laboratory.	Sterile plastic bag or screw-cap pottle.	Keep cool and refrigerate as soon as possible.	As above but place in separate zip-lock bag to preserved tissues. Formalin fumes from other containers may affect fresh tissues. Courier in chilly bin with ice and aim to get to lab within 24 hours of collection.
Frozen tissues Collect as for unpreserved organs.	To examine for viruses or toxic substances	As above	Keep in freezer. NOTE: THESE ARE THE ONLY TISSUES THAT SHOULD BE FROZEN	As for unpreserved tissues.
Body Fluids (e.g. urine, excess fluid in body cavities, blood etc).	To analyse for changes which may help to identify the cause of death.	Suck into a syringe with a sterile needle	Place into sterile tube or keep in syringe with needle capped. Keep refrigerated.	As for unpreserved tissues.

 Table 6: Collection, storage and transport of tissues for laboratory examination.

### I. BLOOD SAMPLES

### When to Take Samples

Ensure you are able to get the samples to a laboratory within 12 - 24 hours of collection ie. AVOID COLLECTING BLOOD ON FRIDAYS OR SATURDAYS if at all possible.

### How Much to Take

COLLECT THE SMALLEST SAMPLE NEEDED FOR YOUR PURPOSES. This will vary depending on the size of the animal and what it is you wish to look or test for - check with your lab for the minimum amount they need. From a healthy reptile it is safe to take from 0.5 - 0.8% of their body weight. Up to 1% of body weight can be taken from a healthy bird. This represents 10% of their total blood volume. For example a 10g striped skink has a total blood volume of approximately 0.6ml, therefore the maximum blood you can take is 0.06ml while, from a 120g New Zealand dotterel you can take up to 1.2ml. Even the small amount taken from the skink is plenty for your vet to get a surprising amount of useful haematology and biochemistry data for health evaluation.

### **Blood Collection Sites**

### 1. Reptiles

The tail (caudal) veins are the preferred sites in all native reptiles. These can be approached from the side, with the animal held on a flat surface in a normal resting position, or from underneath with the animal held on its back or held vertically with the tail hanging down. In all cases the tail must be straight out behind the animal and not curved round to one side. If collecting from the underside the site is in the midline about 1/4 the tail length back from the vent. If collecting from the side the site is the same distance from the base of the tail and just below the vertebral processes, the position of which can be felt with the fingers.

### 2. Birds

There are three main blood collection sites in birds but not all are accessible in all species.

### The right neck (jugular) vein

This is the largest vein near the surface of the body and is the most suitable for collecting large samples quickly. In most birds there is a featherless tract of skin overlying this vein. This can be exposed by parting the feathers and then slightly moistening the skin with alcohol. Kiwis, pigeons and some other birds do not have this featherless tract and this vein should not be used in these species.

The wing (brachial) vein

This vein lies on the inside of the wing near the elbow joint and runs along the inside of upper wing bone (humerus). It can be seen by parting the feathers in this area and wetting with a little alcohol. Although this vein is readily accessible in most species (NOT kiwis) it is very fragile and likely to form a blood blister (haematoma) under the skin when the needle is withdrawn. Using small gauge needles, good restraint and pressure for at least 2 minutes after blood collection can help reduce this risk.

### The leg (metatarsal) vein

This vein runs on the inside of the lower (unfeathered) part of the leg and can be seen or felt by pressure on the leg at the "hock" (tibiotarso-metatarsal) joint. This is the only site suitable in kiwis but is also an excellent site for waterfowl, waders, parrots and many other species. Because it is supported by the surrounding tissues it is less likely to form a blood blister than the wing vein.

### **Physical restraint**

### 1. Reptiles

Even if you are very experienced at blood collection you should not attempt to do this on your own. Reptile veins are very small and fragile and any movement during collection will cause unnecessary damage and may result in excess blood loss. Therefore WORK IN PAIRS with one person doing the restraint and the other concentrating on the blood collection.

Also, remember ALL NATIVE REPTILES CAN SHED THEIR TAILS. Therefore, as the blood collection sites are in the tail, handle very carefully and avoid putting any traction on the tail itself. Placing one hand or a soft cloth over the animal's eyes will help to calm it during the handling. Similarly, when held on their backs, a gentle stroking with one finger along the length of the belly has a relaxing effect. Keep the handling to a minimum to minimise stress and the possibility of overheating.

### 2. Birds

As with reptiles, always have an assistant hold the bird for you while you collect blood. Method of restraint will vary with the species of bird and the site of blood collection. However, to avoid unnecessary trauma to the bird and its veins, restraint should prevent any movement. It is useful to use a flat surface (box, table top, the ground) to steady the bird against in most instances. *Remember not to put any pressure on the chest as the bird needs to freely move this to breath*. Blindfolding the bird with a cupped hand, light towel, your armpit or other means will help to calm it and minimise stress. Avoid removing any more feathers than necessary to expose the blood vessel.

### **Blood Collection technique**

### 1. Reptiles

With the animal suitably restrained the venipuncture site is cleaned of any dirt and then swabbed well with alcohol. A 25 - 27 gauge needle on a 0.5ml or 1.0ml syringe is advanced at a 70 - 90° angle <u>between scales</u> into the animal until you just hit a vertebra. Apply a small amount of traction on the plunger and, at the same time, pull the needle back a bit until you see blood entering the syringe. Slowly pull back on the plunger until you have the desired amount of blood. *Do not take longer then 15 seconds or the blood will clot*. As the needle is withdrawn the assistant places a fresh gauze swab over the site and maintains steady pressure on it for at least 2 minutes.

### 2. Birds

<u>Right Neck vein</u>: The handler holds the bird's body with wings closed and legs held against the tail. The person doing the bleeding holds the bird's head and neck and exposes the vein as described above. The skin is swabbed with alcohol and the needle, with bevel side up, is introduced into the vein in the direction of the tail. Once the needle is in the vein it can help to turn the bevel side down before withdrawing the blood. The assistant can also help by placing a finger on the vein at the base of the neck. When blood collection is complete this finger is moved to a point just above the puncture site

for at least two minutes. Check carefully that bleeding has stopped before releasing the bird's head.

<u>Wing vein</u>: The handler holds the bird on its side against a flat surface with the upper wing, legs and head restrained. The lower wing, with its inner surface facing upwards is pulled out and held firmly by the person collecting the blood. <u>Ensure this wing is held very firmly to prevent twitching at the time the needle is introduced</u>. Swab the area of the elbow to expose the vein and introduce the needle in the direction of the shoulder. Use only a small amount of suction on the plunger as it takes very little vacuum for this vein to collapse. When blood collection is complete the handler places pressure over the vein with a dry gauze swab for at least two minutes.

An alternative method for collecting small samples from very small birds (e.g. robins) is to just prick the blood vessel and allow the drop of blood to fill a small capillary tube. Once full the end of the capillary tube can be touched against a microscope slide and a smear made with a cover slip as described below.

<u>Leg vein</u>: The animal is restrained on its side with both wings against the body, the head and upper leg held by the handler. The person collecting the blood holds the lower leg with inner surface facing upwards. The skin is thoroughly cleaned and swabbed with alcohol. The needle is introduced into the vein in the direction of the body. Blood is collected directly into a syringe or allowed to drip into a microtainer tube. Again, as with the wing vein, an alternative in small birds is to prick the vein and allow the blood to be sucked up into a capillary tube. When blood collection is complete, apply pressure with a dry gauze swab for at least two minutes.

### Handling the fresh blood sample

### Blood Smears

As soon as the needle is withdrawn place one small spot of blood on each of three microscope slides, near the frosted end. Make a blood smear by placing a 22 x 22mm cover slip on the blood spot in such a way that two corners of the cover slip overlap the slide. Allow the blood to spread out and then, in a single smooth action, spread the blood by sliding the cover slip along the length of the slide with your thumb and middle finger. Repeat with the other two slides in quick succession. Allow to air dry completely. DO NOT REFRIGERATE.

### **Blood Tubes**

While the slides are drying the needle is removed from the syringe and the remainder of the blood placed <u>gently</u> in the tubes as described under anticoagulants above. Bird and reptile blood cells are VERY DELICATE so handle with care and do not force through the needle. If the cells break this will adversely affect your results. Refrigerate or place the blood tubes in a chilly bin until the samples can be sent to the lab.

Always replace the cap on the needle and dispose of it and the syringe in appropriate containers.
# Labelling

It is vital that all diagnostic samples are clearly labelled with:

- Species name
- Individual animal's ID
- Date of collection.

Use a sharp pencil to label the frosted end of slides and a fine-point indelible pen or sticky label for the tubes. Clearly specify to the lab which examinations you want done and to whom the results (and the bill!) should be posted. Provide a fax and telephone number through which you can be contacted. All laboratories have submission forms which will make this an easier task for you so get a pad of them before you start. The samples can all be placed in special "Biological Hazard" zip-lock bags which have a pocket for the folded submission form. These can also be obtained through your lab.

# Stopping the bleeding

In most cases simple pressure over the puncture site on a vein will stop the bleeding. Keep the pressure on for at least 2 minutes before checking. If bleeding has not stopped and the animal is not showing signs of severe stress (constant struggling, over-heating, vocalising, rapid respiration) apply pressure for a further minute. If this does not stop the bleeding or the bird is becoming severely stressed apply ferric subsulphate, silver nitrate or potassium permanganate (in that order of preference) to the site until bleeding stops. These chemicals will congeal the blood but also do some damage to the surrounding tissues so should not be used excessively.

## Anticoagulants

These are chemicals that prevent blood from clotting. The two most common anticoagulants are heparin and EDTA. Both of them distort or damage blood cells to some extent. For this reason it is best to make blood smears without any anticoagulant as soon as the sample has been collected.

For the remainder of the sample <u>remove the needle</u> and gently empty it into one or more of the following Microtainer tubes:

<u>Purple top</u>: This contains potassium-EDTA and you will need between 0.2 - 0.5ml of blood to get the right anticoagulant to blood ratio. Run the blood down the side of the tube, snap on the top and gently roll it to mix the blood and anticoagulant. EDTA gives better preservation of the blood cells and allows more accurate blood counts than heparin. If it is necessary to make your own EDTA a 30% solution can be made by mixing 30g EDTA with 100ml sterile distilled water. A minute amount is needed to prevent clotting of up to 0.5ml blood. Draw up a small amount to coat the inside of the syringe and then expel all excess by repeatedly pumping the plunger in and out.

<u>Green top</u>: This contains heparin. This tends to interfere with staining of the blood cells but, in combination with fresh smears, will enable most haematological exams as well as several biochemical tests on the plasma. Blood should be gently placed into the container and mixed as with the purple top.

As with EDTA a small amount of sodium- or lithium-heparin can be used to coat the inside of a syringe. 25 units of heparin will prevent clotting in up to 1ml of blood. Remember to collect blood <u>smears</u> without anticoagulant for best results.

<u>Red top</u>: This has no anticoagulant in it. It is used when your objective is to get serum biochemistry or serology (antibody) tests. Even a very small amount of blood, when allowed to clot in these tubes, will yield enough serum for several biochemistry tests. Blood is gently placed into them but not agitated. Leave to clot at room temperature for 20 minutes and then refrigerate.

# Storage of blood samples

As mentioned, **red top tubes** should be allowed to clot for about 20 minutes at room temperature and then refrigerated. **Purple top and green top tubes** should be refrigerated immediately. If you are not near a fridge place the samples in a chilly bin with ice or freezer blocks. Place newspaper or bubble wrap between the sample and the ice to prevent freezing. With whole blood in tubes that can be kept cool in a fridge or chilly bin you should aim to get them to the lab within 24 hours (e.g. avoid collecting samples on a Friday when their processing is likely to be delayed by the weekend). However, where delays can't be avoided, a 48 hour interval between collection and arrival at the laboratory is acceptable provided the samples are kept continuously cool in the interim.

If you are able to separate the **plasma or serum** from the RBCs by sedimentation or centrifugation then this can be safely frozen and kept for weeks or months. Plasma or serum can be used for biochemistry and serology but not haematology or DNA tests.

**Blood smears** should not be refrigerated at any time as they must be kept dry. Air dried blood smears, held in dust-proof plastic slide boxes at ambient temperature will remain viable up to 4 days. If you are unable to get them to a lab in that time frame, the smears can be preserved ('fixed') by immersing them in absolute methanol for 5 seconds, rinsing with water and letting them air dry again. You should let the lab know you have done this when you send them. Ensure slides are kept separate from each other, i.e. do not stack one directly on top of another.

# **Transport of blood samples**

Place all samples in BioHazard zip-lock bags available through your lab. The completed laboratory submission form should be placed in the pocket of this bag. As long as all samples are clearly labelled several can be placed in the same bag.

<u>Slides</u> containing blood smears should be placed in plastic slide containers which can hold from 1 to 5 slides, each separated from the other. If you are going to collect samples in the field make sure you take several of these containers. Make sure the slide is fully air-dried before placing in the container.

<u>Whole blood in tubes</u> can be placed with the slide container in the zip-lock bag and the whole bag placed in a cardboard or plastic box if it is going to get to the lab within 4 hours. If a delivery delay of more than 4 hours is likely send the bag with some paper or bubble wrap packing in a chilly bin containing ice or freezer blocks.

Ensure your container has the laboratory <u>street</u> address and telephone number clearly marked on the outside as well as your contact details. It is a good practice before you collect your samples to let the lab know, particularly if there are to be a large number or you are requesting an out-of-the-ordinary test. They may give you special instructions on how they would like the sample collected, stored and sent.

# II. FAECAL SAMPLES

## Selecting the sample

Birds and reptiles evacuate all their wastes together. Each dropping is made up of three components:

- 1. Faeces the solid, dark part
- 2. Urates the solid or semi-solid white part
- 3. Urine the clear liquid part (usually not visible under field conditions).

When collecting a faecal sample try to avoid also taking the urates or any substrate (not always easy or possible!).

If collecting from a group of animals, collect several samples that you feel are representative of the group into the same container.

**Old faeces** ( $\leq 1$  week old), providing they haven't completely dried out, can still contain recognisable stages of some parasites e.g. nematodes, tapeworms, flukes and coccidia. These stages are adapted for survival in the environment for lengthy periods.

**Fresh faeces** ( $\leq 1$  hour old) are needed to identify the more fragile parasites, particularly the mobile protozoa such as *Giardia*, *Trichomonas* and *Cryptosporidia*. Swabs of fresh faeces are also necessary for bacterial culture.

A sample of 1 - 5g is adequate for all laboratory faecal examinations. Use a clean spatula to place the sample into a clean, plastic container. If the sample is for bacterial culture it must be placed in a sterile pottle.

**SAFETY NOTE**: All birds and reptiles can harbour *Salmonella* and other disease organisms which could make you sick. Therefore always handle faecal and other samples hygienically **and wash hands thoroughly with undiluted hibiclens**<sup>\*</sup> (or similar antiseptic) after handling animals or their wastes.

## **Special collection techniques**

## Faecal smears and bacterial culture swabs:

Faecal smears can be a very valuable health indicator and can also uncover the presence of abnormal organisms such as yeasts (e.g. *Candida*). To make a smear lightly dip a sterile swab into the <u>top</u> of a <u>fresh</u> faecal sample. Gently smear this along the centre of a glass microscope slide and allow to air dry. Place the swab into the swab container. Label the swab and slide.

## Cloacal flush

A cloacal flush can be performed on both birds and reptiles if you are unable to obtain a faecal sample. The procedure can be done under manual restraint and is the same in both groups of animals. An appropriately sized smooth, plastic catheter is lubricated (e.g. with KY jelly) and attached to a syringe containing luke-warm 0.9% sterile saline (the volume of fluid should be no more than 1% of the animal's body weight). The catheter is gently passed into the cloaca being careful not to force it. The saline is then pushed into the cloaca and sucked out again. Repeat this 3 - 4 times and then remove the catheter. The fluid is placed into a sterile container, labelled and forwarded to the laboratory.

## Faecal sample storage

## Whole faeces and cloacal washes

Keep your sample in a closed container in the fridge or in a chilly bin containing ice. DO NOT FREEZE. As mentioned some parasites (e.g. Giardia) will not be detectable if there is a delay of > 1 hour in getting it to the laboratory.

## Faecal preservation

<sup>\*</sup> Hibiclens Skin Cleanser antiseptic (= 4% chlorhexidine gluconate), ICI pharmaceuticals.

Keep cool in fridge if possible. If there are likely to be delays of more than 3 weeks in getting faeces to a laboratory you can add 5% formalin to the faeces to preserve most parasites (check with the lab first). Add a volume of formalin equal to the volume of faeces and mix thoroughly with a clean instrument. If you are looking for the more fragile organisms you should consult your lab for advice on handling the faecal specimens you collect.

## Faecal smears

Faecal smears should be allowed to completely dry at room temperature before being placed into a slide container for transport. If there is likely to be a delay of >24 hours in getting the slide to the lab you can "heat fix" the bacteria by slowly passing the slide through a butane flame 5 times. Advise the lab that you have done this. DO NOT REFRIGERATE.

## Faecal sample transport.

Place faecal pottle and slide container in a zip-lock BioHazard bag and pack this into an outer package. Use a chilly bin with ice if the sample is for culture or identification of protozoa and delays of >1 hour are likely.

# III. ECTOPARASITE SAMPLES

Some ectoparasites, such as mites are very small and difficult to see unless they are moving under a bright light. Also many mites are active only at night (e.g. red mites) when they come and suck blood from their hosts. They spend the day time hiding in cracks and crevices in the environment where the animal lives. Therefore, if you suspect mites are causing a problem but can't see them on the animal, check the environment where the animal spends time at night (e.g. roosting sites). Some dust samples from crevices in this area placed in 70% alcohol with 5% glycerol may uncover the culprits. (If you <u>do</u> find mites, be wary about jumping to conclusions - most mites live in soil, are completely harmless and may not be the cause of your problem!).

It is useful to identify the species of ectoparasites because this yields information on their life cycles which can be used by your vet to recommend the most effective treatment and control measures.

# **Ectoparasite collection techniques**

<u>Ticks</u>

Using fine-tipped tweezers with a curved end grasp the tick under the head to extract its mouth parts. Failure to remove the mouthparts can cause irritation and localised infections. If the animal is severely covered in ticks you may need to remove them over

2 -3 days to prevent excessive trauma. Applying a dab of alcohol to the tick relaxes it so that it can be removed more easily.

# Lice and Mites

Some lice and mites can be collected with tweezers or by touching them with a watermoistened wooden applicator stick (avoid using cotton buds as the parasites get tangled up in the cotton strands). If this is unsuccessful the animal's body (but not head!!) can be placed in a plastic bag containing a cotton ball or gauze swab lightly soaked in chloroform. DO THIS IN A WELL VENTILATED SPACE. The animal is restrained for 1-2 minutes and the bag held closed around the neck to avoid inhalation of the chloroform fumes. Remove the animal and dispose of the chloroform swab. The parasites will have fallen into the bag and can be placed directly into your storage container.

## **Ectoparasite storage**

The parasites are placed into a solution of 70% alcohol and 5% glycerol in a screw-capped container which is labelled as follows:

- 1. Species name of host animal
- 2. ID of individual animal
- 3. Geographic site of animal collection
- 4. Body part from which parasites collected (e.g. external ear canals)
- 5. Date of collection
- 6. Your name and contact number

No refrigeration is required.

## **Ectoparasite transport.**

Place the container in a zip-lock bag then outer, solid container with packing, if necessary to prevent breakage in transit. Can be forwarded to lab. at your convenience.

# IV. BACTERIAL CULTURE SWABS

Bacterial cultures are used to identify disease-causing bacteria. Once cultured they can also be tested against various antibiotics to see which are the most effective. This is valuable information used to guide treatment where necessary.

## **Collection techniques for bacterial cultures**

## Faeces

This was described under faecal sample collection techniques

## Cloacal flush

Also described under faecal sample collection technique. However, remember that, for bacterial culture the sample must be collected with a sterile catheter and sterile saline and placed in a sterile container.

## Cloacal swab

The area around the vent is lightly cleaned with alcohol. A paediatric swab is moistened by dipping it into its transport medium and then inserted gently into the cloaca. **Do not force or you will inflict damage**. Lightly rotate and then withdraw and place into the transport medium.

## Choanal swab

The choanal slit is an opening in the roof of the mouth which connects directly with the nasal cavity. This is a good site from which to culture bacteria if a disease of the upper respiratory tract is suspected. In some birds (e.g. pigeons) the bill is easily held open with fingers while with others (e.g. parrots) and most reptiles an instrument is needed to do this. This could be a pair of tweezers, forceps or sturdy bent (but blunt ended) wire. Be careful not too damage the mouth or bill or to use something that the animal could bite and swallow or injure itself.

Once the mouth is open direct the tip of the swab into the choanal slit towards the nostrils and swab from front to the back. Slightly rotate the swab as you do your sweep. Place in the transport medium and label.

## Storage of culture swabs

Bacterial culture swabs are sold in sterile packets that include a sleeve containing Stewart's transport medium into which the used swab is placed. This medium prevents the swab from drying out in transit and provides an environment suitable for most types of bacteria. Some can be purchased which include charcoal in the medium. This absorbs bacterial toxins and is particularly useful if there are likely to be delays in transporting the swab to the laboratory.

## **Transport of culture swabs**

The swab in its transport medium should be placed in a zip-lock BioHazard bag and refrigerated or kept cool until it can be sent to the lab. Ideally it should reach the lab within 24 hours. If this is not possible (e.g. due to weekend) keep refrigerated until the first available mailing day.

# V. POST MORTEM (NECROPSY) SAMPLE COLLECTION

If it is possible to send a dead animal directly to a lab or veterinarian for post mortem this will get you the best results. If there are likely to be delays in shipment and the animal is small, open the body cavity and place the entire animal into 10% formalin to prevent further decomposition. Ask the lab to do a post-mortem on this preserved specimen. If this is not possible it is better to have a go yourself rather than leave the carcase to rot. The following outlines a procedure for performing a post mortem on a bird or reptile. It is essential to be systematic and follow the same procedure each time to avoid missing things.

# **Before You Start**

- 1. Make sure you have the equipment listed in Appendix II and a clean, dry, solid surface to work on. The equipment must be clean and cutting instruments sharp.
- 2. Ensure your personal safety from contagious diseases (e.g. psittacosis, Salmonella) wear rubber gloves, a face mask and overalls or other garment to protect your clothes from contamination. Work in a well ventilated area with good lighting.
- 3. Fill out the baseline information in a Necropsy Form . This should include:
  - Specific details relating to the animal: species, individual ID (e.g. band or microchip number), age (even "juvenile" or "mature adult" is better than nothing), sex, location where animal was found dead, the date the animal was found.
  - Case history: a summary of any information you have relevant to this animal and its circumstances of death.
  - Your details: Name, organisation and contact details
  - The date of the post mortem.
  - Note all your findings as you proceed.

# **External Examination**

Record the body weight and standard measurements (e.g. snout to vent, bill length etc).

Before cutting into the animal carefully check the entire carcase for body condition and state of decomposition. Check for any abnormalities such as missing scales or feathers, wounds, swellings etc.

For birds, once you have checked the plumage, it is best to remove all the feathers taking care not to tear the skin. This has two benefits:

1) it prevents messy feathers getting in the way when you cut into the bird and

2) you will get a much better appreciation of the condition of the skin as a whole and the presence of any bruises or small wounds.

Once the feathers are removed briefly dip the carcase in water or under a running tap to damp down any remaining down feathers.

## **Internal examination**

Lay the animal on its back on your dissecting board and cut the skin from the vent to the jaw. In birds take care not to cut into the crop which lies very close to the skin surface on the right side of the neck. From this midline incision cut across to each limb and then dissect off the skin to the sides of the body.

Carefully remove a flap including the abdominal muscles, ribs and and keel (sternum) to expose the internal organs. Do this slowly and carefully taking note of any excess blood or other fluids which may escape from the body cavities. In birds also carefully check the air-sacs which will be ruptured as you remove this flap - they should be thin and transparent.

## **Examining the organs**

Before you remove any organs check that they are in their normal positions and note any abnormalities. It takes some time and practice to get to know the normal appearance of organs in the different species.

Remove and examine the organs in the following order:

- Heart
- Liver
- Thymus (present just above the heart)
- Thyroid glands (at the base of the trachea)
- Lungs and trachea
- Pancreas (usually visible within the first loop of intestines before you remove the gut)
- Gastrointestinal tract from the mouth to the vent
- Spleen (usually close to the stomach, small, spherical and red)
- The reproductive tract including ovaries or testes.
- The adrenal glands (which lie close to the gonads and kidneys)
- The kidneys (lie in a depression in the pelvis or within the pelvic canal)
- The eyes
- The brain
- The muscles and skeleton including joints, claws, beak etc

Once you have removed all the organs examine each one for changes in:

- Size
- Shape
- Colour
- Consistency

and make appropriate notes on your Necropsy Form. If you have the opportunity to weigh any of the organs this is also useful information. Cut into each organ and check for any of the above changes. Also note any contents in the stomach and intestines and the presence of parasites.

# Taking samples for laboratory examination.

As you examine each organ place a small sample (about 5mm square) in 10% formalin. Where you suspect gout (chalky white deposits around joints or within the body cavity or kidneys) place the affected tissues into 70% alcohol which, unlike formalin, doesn't dissolve the uric acid crystals.

# WHERE YOU SEE ABNORMALITIES ALWAYS TAKE A SAMPLE!

If you suspect toxicity or viral disease or you want tissues for DNA work it is worth keeping some samples frozen. Place parasites in separate, labelled small containers in alcohol or 5% formalin. Remember to write down all the samples you have collected on your Necropsy Form and label all containers clearly.

Samples for bacterial culture need to be from fresh, unfixed tissues placed in a sterile container. Provided you haven't contaminated them with your instruments, you can also take swabs for culture from fluids, abscesses etc. or you can collect some of the fluids or pus into a sterile syringe and needle and send this, with the needle capped, to the lab for culture.

## **Storage of Necropsy Samples**

Fixed samples should be stored at room temperature in tightly sealed screw-cap containers.

<u>Fresh, unfixed samples, for bacterial culture</u> (including swabs, fluids, pus, tissues etc) should be stored in similar sterile containers and kept in a refrigerator or chilly bin with ice.

<u>Fresh, unfixed samples for viral culture or toxicology</u> should be placed in a similar sterile container and kept frozen.

## **Transport of Necropsy Samples.**

Ensure all sample containers are well sealed and place them into zip-lock biohazard bags. These can then be placed in a plastic or cardboard sealed container with appropriate packing to prevent movement during transit.

Fresh or frozen samples should be placed in a chilly bin with ice or freezer packs.

Aim to get the samples to the laboratory within 24 hours of collection.

# **GLOSSARY OF TERMS**

While the use of technical jargon has been minimised it is not possible to describe diagnostic tests without the use of some of the more commonly used terms. The following definitions have been used in this booklet.

Biochemistry	<i>chemistry</i> The scientific study and evaluation of blood chemicals	
Erythrocytes	An alternative name for red blood cells (RBCs)	
Haemaglobin (Hb)	The red pigment used in red blood cells to transport oxygen	
Haematocrit (Hct)	An alternative name for packed cell volume (PCV)	
Haematology	The scientific study and evaluation of blood cells	
Leucocytes	An alternative name for white blood cells (WBCs)	
Microbiology	Examination of diagnostic samples for bacteria	
PCV	Packed cell volume, a measure of the relative proportion of cells vs fluid in blood; used as a measure of anaemia and hydration status	
Plasma	The fluid component of blood before the cells have clotted.	
RBC	Red blood cells containing the pigment haemaglobin (Hb)	
Refractometer	An instrument used to measure serum protein concentration	
Serology	The measurement of antibody levels in serum	
Serum	The fluid component of blood after	

	the cells have clotted.
Thrombocytes	Small blood cells involved in blood clotting (called platelets in mammals)
WBC	White blood cells, a key component of the immune system
Whole blood	Blood containing an anticoagulant before the plasma has been separated from the cells

# EQUIPMENT FOR DIAGNOSTIC SAMPLE COLLECTION

# 1. General

٠	Gauze swabs	•	Rubber gloves
٠	Sharp pencil	٠	Hibiclens antiseptic hand
٠	Indelible fine-point black pen	wa	sh
٠	Adhesive labels	٠	Plastic zip-lock "BioHazard" bags
٠	Pre-labelled sample transport containers	•	Plastic rubbish bag or box for used needles etc.
٠	Packing tape to seal transport container.	٠	Pad of laboratory submission forms
٠	Courier labels	•	Ice blocks or freezer packs as needed
٠	Tissue paper or bubble wrap for packing samples	٠	Chilly bin
٠	Plastic slide transport	•	Bag, towel or soft cloth to blindfold animal during
co	ntainers		restraint as appropriate
		•	Scales to obtain body weights of animals

In addition to the above the following specific equipment is useful:

# 2. Blood

• • • •	0.5 or 1.0ml syringes 25, 26 or 27G hypodermic needles Alcohol swabs Absolute methanol for fixing blood smears (if delay > 4 days in getting to lab) Silver nitrate sticks to stop bleeding if necessary	<ul> <li>10 µl x 32mm capillary tubes</li> <li>Microhaematocrit centrifuge</li> <li>Refractometer</li> <li>Microscope slides with frosted ends</li> <li>22 x 22mm cover slips</li> <li>Microtainer blood tubes (purple, green and red-top)</li> </ul>
		• Microtanier blood tubes (purple, green and red-top)

# 3. Faeces

Clean screw-cap plastic	Sterile smooth, round-ended plastic catheters
pottles	• KY jelly
<ul> <li>Sterile plastic or glass pottles</li> </ul>	• 0.9% sterile saline
• 5% formalin	<ul> <li>Microscope slides with frosted ends.</li> </ul>
Butane lighter	
<ul> <li>Tongue depressors or similar spatulas</li> </ul>	

# 4. Ectoparasites

# 5. Bacterial Culture Swabs

•	Paediatric culture swabs in Stewart's transport medium with charcoal	•	Sterile screw-cap pottles.
---	--	---	----------------------------

# 6. Post-Mortems

# THE VALUE OF BLOOD AS A DIAGNOSTIC TOOL

## Introduction

Because it circulates throughout the whole body and is readily accessible blood is one of the most useful tools for health evaluation. Veterinary diagnosis is based on detective work - piecing together a number of clues in order to see the "big picture" of what is really going on. It is very rare for any one diagnostic test to give you an answer, more often its a case of looking at a variety of clues, weighing up the relative significance of each and then coming to your diagnosis. For this reason you will need the assistance of a veterinarian to help you select and interpret the specific blood tests appropriate to your situation. However, the following is included to give you a basic understanding of blood and how it can be used as a diagnostic tool.

#### **Composition of blood**

Blood is composed of **cells** suspended in a fluid called **plasma** which constantly circulates throughout the body. The cells are either red blood cells (RBCs or erythrocytes), white blood cells (WBCs or leucocytes) or thrombocytes.

#### Red blood cells

There is only one type of RBC and its main function is the transport of oxygen to the tissues via an iron-containing protein called haemoglobin (**Hb**). The proportion of RBCs as a percent of total blood volume is called the Packed Cell Volume or **PCV** (also sometimes referred to as the haematocrit or Hct). In birds this generally varies from 35 - 55% while in reptiles the range is generally 20 - 35%. Because of the vital role of RBCs the measurement of the PCV and Hb concentration are very valuable indicators of health. Different disease processes also effect the size, shape and internal structure of RBCs all of which can be assessed by an experienced eye from a stained blood smear. RBCs can be invaded by some blood parasites (e.g. *Plasmodium*, the cause of avian malaria) and these can be identified with special stains.

#### White blood cells

WBCs are part of the immune system and are therefore involved in body defences.

The following types of white blood cells are found in birds and reptiles:

Heterophil	This is usually the most numerous WBC. It has a role in inflammation and the first line of defence in acute bacterial infections.
Lymphocyte	This cell is also involved in inflammation, but usually of a more long- term nature. Some types produce antibodies, others invade the sites of infection in the tissues, often with monocytes.
Monocyte	These are the largest WBCs and are involved in combating chronic

	infections by cell-invading organisms such as viruses, protozoa, chlamydia and TB bacteria.
Eosinophil	These are usually present in low numbers except when an animal is suffering from parasitism or an allergy.
Basophil	These are usually the rarest WBC and also have a role in combating allergens. When they leave the circulation and enter tissues they convert to mast cells which produce histamines.

A <u>total</u> WBC count is made from a blood sample containing an anticoagulant (see below) and is a valuable but non-specific indicator of the presence of inflammation, infection, stress and, in some cases, cancer (e.g. leukaemia). A <u>differential</u> WBC count is made from a blood smear and assesses the total number and proportion of each type of WBC. This allows the veterinarian to narrow down the possible types of disease processes going on. Some blood parasites (e.g. leucocytozoon) can also invade WBCs and can be identified from a specially stained blood smear.

# Thrombocytes

Thrombocytes are the equivalent of the mammalian platelet. They are involved in blood clotting and are consumed when there is active inflammation. Their numbers are assessed in the blood smear.

# <u>Plasma</u>

As mentioned plasma is the non-cellular part of blood. It is a very complex fluid that contains a wide range of proteins which are involved in body defence (eg antibodies), control (e.g. enzymes, blood clotting factors and hormones) and transport of chemicals around the body (e.g. albumin). Albumin is the most important blood protein for regulating the animal's fluid balance. Globulins are the other major protein and are made up of antibodies. A rise in globulins indicates an active infection. The measurement of both is called the Total Protein (TP) and is a useful indicator of hydration status and the presence of disease.

Enzymes are essential catalysts of chemical reactions that occur in the body. Different enzymes are localised within different cells in the body. When these cells are damaged the enzymes leak out into the blood where their concentration can be measured in the plasma. A rise in enzymes can help localise the site of disease. Common enzymes used to assess damage in different organs are:

Muscle and	Aspartate aminotransferase (AST) and Creatine Kinase (CK)
heart:	
Liver:	Lactate dehydrogenase (LD or LDH) (also elevated by RBC breakdown (haemolysis).
Pancreas:	Amylase, lipase

The plasma also contains nutrients (e.g. glucose) minerals (e.g. calcium), electrolytes (e.g. sodium, potassium) and the end-products of the body's metabolism. These may also be raised or lowered in the presence of disease. Those of diagnostic value in birds and reptiles include:

Kidney:	<b>Uric Acid</b> , the equivalent to mammalian urea which is a waste product from protein metabolism. It can cause serious damage (gout) when elevated in the presence of kidney disease or dehydration.
Muscle, heart	Potassium (also elevated by haemolysis)
Liver:	Bile acids
Bone:	Calcium
Pancreas, liver	Glucose

# <u>Serum</u>

Serum is the non-cellular part of blood after it has clotted (i.e. when no anticoagulant is used). Because it is devoid of clotting factors Total Serum Protein (**TSP**) will be slightly lower than the total protein (**TP**) measured from plasma in the same animal. However, serum can be used to evaluate all the factors listed above.

#### REFERENCES

Campbell, T.W. (1994) *Hematology* in Ritchie, B.W., Harrison, G.J. and Harrison, L.R. (eds) Avian Medicine: Principles and Application. Winger Publishing Inc. Lake Worth, Florida.

Campbell, T.W. (1996) *Clinical Pathology* pp 248 - 257 in Mader, D.R. (ed) Reptile Medicine and Surgery. W.B. Saunders Company

Dein, F.J. (1984) *Laboratory Manual for Avian Haematology*. Association of Avian Veterinarians.

Frye, F.L. (1994) *Reptile Clinician's Handbook: A Compact Clinical and Surgical Reference*. Kreiger Publishing Co., Malabar, Florida

Hochleithner, M. (1994) *Biochemistries* in Ritchie, B.W., Harrison, G.J. and Harrison, L.R. (eds) Avian Medicine: Principles and Application. Winger Publishing Inc. Lake Worth, Florida.

Jenkins, J.R. (1996) *Diagnostic and Clinical Techniques* pp 264 - 276 in Mader, D.R. (ed) Reptile Medicine and Surgery. W.B. Saunders Company

Latimer, K.S. and Rakich, P.M. (1994) *Necropsy Examination* in Ritchie, B.W., Harrison, G.J. and Harrison, L.R. (eds) Avian Medicine: Principles and Application. Winger Publishing Inc. Lake Worth, Florida.

Mader, D.R. (1996) *Euthanasia and Necropsy* in Mader, D.R. (ed) Reptile Medicine and Surgery. W.B. Saunders Company

McCluggage, D.M. (1991) *Basic Avian Medical Techniques* pp 67 - 80 in 1991 AAV Manual for Avian Laboratory Procedures, Association of Avian Veterinarians.

# ANIMAL MOVEMENTS AND DISEASE RISK

A WORKBOOK

4th Edition

South Africa

18-21 November 2002

MODELLING OF POPULATION AND DISEASE DYNAMICS: OUTBREAK and VORTEX

# **OUTBREAK**

A Model of Wildlife Disease Epidemiology and its Impacts on Population Viability

## **Project Team**

Philip Miller, Conservation Breeding Specialist Group (SSC/IUCN) Robert Lacy, Chicago Zoological Society JP Pollak, Cornell University Patti Bright, American Bird Conservancy

with assistance from

Dominic Travis, Lincoln Park Zoo Laura Hungerford, University of Maryland Jonathan Ballou, Smithsonian Institution / National Zoological Park

## **Project Summary**

Population viability analysis (PVA) has become a valuable tool in the arsenal of conservation biologists as they seek to develop more effective ways to manage and conserve endangered and threatened wildlife species. Presently, there are several good simulation packages of wildlife population dynamics that incorporate detailed models of the diverse deterministic and stochastic (random) forces affecting the growth or decline of populations that are adversely impacted by human activity. In addition, there is a group of several informative epidemiological models that biologists employ to simulate disease spread through wildlife populations. However, the available population viability analysis models use, at best, only simplistic representations of the role of disease in wildlife population dynamics, while the epidemiological models assume static population size or use only very simple models of population change. Yet the dynamics of both population change and of diseases may be found to be very different if we were to assess simultaneously a more inclusive range of stochastic processes that affect each, perhaps in complex and interacting ways. In response to this need to develop a more comprehensive tool for PVA, we propose to construct a detailed integrated simulation package that will allow modeling of intertwined wildlife population dynamics and wildlife disease. This simulation modeling environment will no doubt improve our understanding of both systems and, therefore, will promote a closer collaboration between wildlife population biologists and veterinarians as they work to conserve our planet's biological diversity.

## **Statement of Research Problem**

Conservation biologists use a tool known as population viability analysis (PVA) to evaluate the risk of wildlife population extinction resulting from human impacts on the environment. While disease can be a major factor influencing the survival of threatened populations, traditional PVA methods treat the complex nature of disease in very simple terms. Existing models that simulate the nature of infectious disease have not been adequately and systematically linked with PVA applications in wildlife conservation.

# **Specific Hypotheses and Objectives**

#### Hypotheses:

- 1. Integrating quantitative simulation models of infectious disease epidemiology and wildlife population viability will lead to a greater understanding of the dynamics of disease and its role in impacting population growth.
- 2. Greater understanding of the interaction between wildlife disease epidemiology and population growth dynamics will lead to more informed and effective conservation of threatened and endangered biological diversity.

#### Objectives:

- 1. To develop a detailed, individual-based model of disease epidemiology for use by the global wildlife disease ecology and veterinary community.
- 2. To develop a detailed integrated simulation package that will allow individual-based modeling of intertwined wildlife population dynamics and disease epidemiology.
- 3. To develop a tool that can be used for evaluating disease risks associated with wildlife conservation strategies and for comparing the costs and benefits of disease prevention and control programs in wildlife populations.

## Justification and Significance

While substantial effort is being directed toward constructing demographic models of wildlife population viability with greater realism and mathematical sophistication (e.g., Sjögren-Gulve and Ebenhard 2000; Reed et al. 2002; Beissinger and McCullough 2002), there is considerably less attention directed at the larger ecological factors that influence population persistence. One such factor is infectious disease and its transmission dynamics among co-existing human and animal populations. PVA models do not adequately reflect the demographic effect of disease on a population, which can vary considerably depending upon the structure of the host population, the characteristics of the infectious agent, and environmental variables such as habitat condition and availability.

Interestingly, the great majority of epidemiological models of infectious disease focus primarily on the disease status of the individuals in the population (e.g., susceptible, infected, recovered) and assume a static population size or use only very simple models of population change. As a result, these models produce estimates of morbidity and mortality without considering the important effects of random demographic, environmental, and genetic factors. In other words, they lack the core components that make effective PVA models inherently useful: an explicit treatment of the intrinsic and extrinsic stochastic forces that put small populations of wildlife at risk of extinction. By developing a detailed, individual-based simulation modeling package of the epidemiology of wildlife disease, and by studying the impacts of disease on population viability through its linkage with an existing PVA model, we will be able to greatly enhance our understanding of 1) the process of disease transmission in small wildlife populations subject to unpredictable demography (i.e., birth and death rates), and 2) the interactions that occur among demographic factors, environmental variables, disease pathogens, and host genetics to impact endangered population persistence. This integrated product will be an extremely valuable tool for evaluating disease risk in wildlife conservation strategies and will provide an outstanding opportunity for productive collaboration between the wildlife ecology and veterinary communities. Moreover, the package will serve as a unique teaching vehicle for students in these fields of study. Through this process, our effort will also promote a more intimate integration of scientific disciplines – an endeavor that has

recently been argued as vital to the success of biodiversity conservation and its inherent complexity (Redman 1999; Nyhus et al. 2002; Lacy and Miller 2002).

#### **Literature Review**

#### An Introduction to Population Viability Analysis

Under almost any set of circumstances, wildlife populations will fluctuate in size over time. These fluctuations result from random (stochastic) variation acting on a set of processes – most notably birth, offspring sex ratio, dispersal, and death – that, acting together, determine the dynamics of population change. Numbers of individuals comprising a given population are determined largely by specified rates of reproduction, survival, and dispersal in addition to the ecological limitations of habitat carrying capacity. Variation in these rates over time is influenced by processes both intrinsic (demographic stochasticity, genetic drift and/or inbreeding depression, or deviations in age or social structure) and extrinsic (environmental variation and catastrophic events) to the population (Shaffer 1981; Soulé 1987).

While random fluctuations in size are a normal part of wildlife population dynamics, reductions in mean population size brought about by human activities can result in a greatly increased risk of extinction through annual stochastic variation in demographic rates. As a population declines in size, these random forces can produce larger proportional changes in annual population size. The process can continue over time until a single major event or an unfortunate set of events occurring simultaneously can eliminate the population. This synergistic interaction between population size and stochastic extinction risk is summarized in the heuristic "extinction vortex" model introduced by Gilpin and Soulé (1986). The recognition that threatened populations could become extinct largely through bad luck – even in the presence of active management designed to increase population size over the long term – was a major advance in the emerging multi-disciplinary field of conservation biology.

Population viability analysis (PVA) soon emerged as a method for practical application of the extinction vortex concept by examining the threats to persistence of wildlife populations (Boyce 1992; Beissinger and Westphal 1998; Groom and Pascual 1998). Traditionally, PVA starts with a model of the forces that drive population change and then assesses population performance under a specified set of conditions. PVA can use empirical, analytical, or simulation methods, but most processes rely on simulation to assess the interacting affects of a large number of complex processes. Individual-based models are the most appropriate tool for investigating extinction dynamics in small populations, particularly when including inbreeding depression and other random genetic processes (Lacy 2000a). The primary use of PVA is to estimate the probability of extinction of a population, the mean time to extinction, or other measures of population performance such as growth rate, stability, or genetic diversity. A comparison of such measures of population viability for a set of different scenarios then allows comparison of which threats are most important. In addition, sensitivity analysis can be used to determine the primary demographic determinants of population growth (e.g., Wisdom and Mills 1997), and management alternatives can be compared to determine the most effective conservation strategies (e.g., Possingham 1995; Hamilton and Moller 1995; Herrero et al. 2000). In a recent comprehensive study of the predictive capability of PVA modeling packages, Brook et al. (2000) demonstrated that, when adequately parameterized with reliable field data on the species or population of concern, PVA methods can provide a reliable technique for demographic population projection. Studies such as this have bolstered the validity of PVA as a predictive tool; however, when population data are scarce or when models are not sufficiently detailed, quantitative predictions of the fate of endangered wildlife populations should be interpreted with caution. In these cases, comparative analyses such as those described above constitute the most appropriate use of PVA methodologies.

#### Disease Epidemiology Models and PVA

An extensive literature exists on the theory of infectious disease ecology in natural populations of wildlife (Grenfell and Dobson 1995) as well as humans (Anderson and May 1982, 1991). The seminal papers by Anderson (1982) and May (1986) laid the conceptual foundation for how we discuss infectious disease dynamics in natural populations. These early publications formed the basis for a more detailed treatment of both theoretical (e.g., Li et al. 1999) and applied (e.g., McCarty and Miller 1998) infectious disease dynamics. Most of these analyses include so-called "S-I-R" – type models of disease transmission dynamics that describe the relative proportion of a population comprising each disease state – susceptible (S), infectious (I), or recovered (R) – and the time-dependent probabilities of transition between states based on the specific characteristics of the infectious disease under study. Important characteristics include the disease prevalence, the contact rate between individuals in the population, the probability of transmission of the infectious agent given a contact, the latent period of infection, the disease-specific mortality rate, the rate of acquisition of resistance.

The agricultural community has repeatedly applied components of this theoretical background in quantitative risk assessments associated with, for example, the movement of animals and/or animal products (e.g., MacDiarmid 1993; Clement et al. 1995). Some of these analyses have demonstrated specific relevance to the field of biodiversity conservation *in situ* (e.g., Hess 1996), and the wildlife veterinary community is beginning to develop an increased awareness of the importance of quantitative risk assessment (e.g., Woodford 1993; Armstrong and Seal 2001). However, as pointed out nearly a decade ago by Lyles and Dobson (1993), the large majority of conservation biologists ignore wildlife population disease concerns outright or, at best, treat them in a very cursory fashion. Comparatively, consideration of disease in the captive propagation of wildlife species has received significantly more attention (e.g., Wolff and Seal 1993; Ballou 1993). Disease can be an important factor in modulating many of the processes that drive wildlife population dynamics. It can directly affect survival and reproductive success, and can also be a major influence in the specification of annual variation in demographic rates. Perhaps more subtly, disease can impact growth dynamics by altering the genetic, social, and age structures of populations.

When disease has been considered in a PVA context, traditional techniques have adopted a rather simple approach to its dynamics and its effects on the persistence of infected wildlife populations. Specifically, disease events are defined solely in terms of their impact on population demographic parameters. For example, if a disease outbreak is assumed to occur episodically with extreme consequences for the population, an age-specific survival and/or fecundity function can be developed that includes an infrequent but dramatic reduction in the parameter value. In the years between these "catastrophic" events, disease is deemed to be absent from the population. This type of approach has been used many times by the IUCN's Conservation Breeding Specialist Group (CBSG) in their implementation of PVA known as Population and Habitat Viability Assessment (e.g., Pucek et al. 1996; Werikhe et al. 1998; Jennings et al. 2001). In contrast to this "all or nothing" approach to infectious disease biology, some explicit consideration of infectious disease epidemiology can lead to more realistic simulation of disease within a given PVA. External epidemiological models can generate predictions for cyclical or other temporal patterns of disease (Grenfell and Dobson 1995). With this type of information, a PVA practitioner can then develop more sophisticated functions that model the consequent temporal trends in population demographic rates. These trends might be linear in response to increasing disease prevalence. cyclical, or follow some other specified time course.

Just as PVA models benefit from an individual-based approach, so too can simulation models of wildlife disease epidemiology gain in value from simulating the transmission dynamics of infectious disease at the level of the individual. In the presence of intrinsically unpredictable demography, the

course of an infectious disease is itself unpredictable and must be modeled as such. A review of wildlife disease models by Barlow (1995) reveals that, while there may be some elements of stochasticity included in their construction (mostly in the form of spatial heterogeneity), nearly all are population-level models that are not suitable for simulating the subtle and often non-linear demographic processes characteristic of small populations of wildlife. Based on such a review, there clearly exists a need to expand our application of classical disease epidemiology models to incorporate an individual component of stochasticity.

## A "Metamodel" Approach to Linking Disease Epidemiology and PVA

The discussion presented in this section provides a case for arguing that 1) the development of an individual-based, stochastic model of infectious disease epidemiology would greatly enhance our understanding of infectious processes in small, threatened wildlife populations; 2) the physical linkage of this stochastic model with traditional PVA simulation modeling techniques would lead to a significant improvement in both our understanding of the role of disease in wildlife population growth dynamics and our ability to assess the risk of extinction of those populations threatened by human activity; and 3) an enhanced PVA approach incorporating a more sophisticated treatment of wildlife disease would greatly assist the wildlife conservation decision-making process. This integration of models from different and sometimes quite distinct disciplines has received considerable attention in the recent environmental conservation literature (e.g., Clark and Wallace 1998; Pickett et al. 1999). Others (e.g., Nyhus et al. 2002; Lacy and Miller 2002; Miller and Lacy 2002) have recently put this larger interdisciplinary discussion into sharper focus within the context of expanding our notion of traditional PVA techniques by encouraging collaboration between conservation biologists and a wide range of experts from other natural and social sciences.

The project proposed here could represent an outstanding example of close and successful collaboration between experts in population biology, disease epidemiology, and wildlife veterinary science. Leaders in interorganizational collaborative theory have recognized the difficulties in achieving such a successful synthesis (Trist 1983; Westley and Vredenburg 1996; Wear 1999; Westley and Miller 2002), and our work here may help to provide a blueprint for productive conservation biology practice.

# 7. Preliminary Data

Because of the specific nature of the proposed software development project, traditional preliminary experimental data do not exist. However, we can attempt to provide some results from selected simple PVA and wildlife disease modeling efforts to demonstrate our progress in formulating and evolving the ideas presented herein.

<u>A. Mountain Gorilla Population and Habitat Viability Assessment Workshop: December 1997</u> Veterinary experts from the Mountain Gorilla Veterinary Center (Rwanda), International Gorilla Conservation Program, the Mountain Gorilla Veterinary Project, and the Center for Conservation Medicine were asked to identify infectious diseases that were either current or future threats to isolated mountain gorilla populations distributed in eastern equatorial Africa (Werikhe et al. 1998). Intense discussion over a 4-day period led to the construction of three catastrophic disease events: 1) an influenza-like disease occurring about once every 10 years with just 5% reduction in survivorship; 2) a severe, but not pandemic, viral disease occurring once every 10 years with measurable effects on both survival and adult female reproduction; and 3) an hypothetical viral disease with chronic cyclicity that targets the female reproductive system, occurring every 25 years but eliminating all reproduction when it strikes. These data were incorporated into an individual-based PVA simulation modeling package known as *VORTEX* (Miller and Lacy 1999; see next subsection) in order to evaluate the catastrophic impact of these disease events on mountain gorilla population persistence over a 100-year timeframe. The diseases were assumed to occur independently, thereby allowing more than one event to affect a simulated population within a single year.

Table 1 below shows the results of these simulations. The analyses clearly indicate that the inclusion of influenza and the pandemic viral disease can significantly reduce mean population growth rates compared to that for a disease-free population. Moreover, the addition of the infrequent but severe reproductive disease results in a population that, on average, declines at a rate of about 1% per year. This simple treatment of disease as periodic catastrophes dramatically illustrated the impact that infectious disease can have on mountain gorilla populations. Perhaps more importantly, this modeling process forced the gorilla veterinarians to, for the first time, sit down and define quantitatively the types of infectious diseases they thought could have a serious impact on wild gorilla populations. This was an important step in their own process of conservation problem formulation and the recommendation of alternative solutions to the problem.

**Table 1.** Impacts of selected disease scenarios (see text for description) on the viability of simulated mountain gorillas occupying the Virunga volcanoes region of eastern Africa. Output from VORTEX simulation model includes stochastic population growth rate (standard deviation), probability of extinction over the 100-year timeframe of the simulation, mean final population size (standard deviation), and average levels of population heterozygosity after 100 years. Data adapted from Werikhe et al. (1998).

Scenario	$r_{s}$ (SD)	P(E)	N <sub>100</sub> (SD)	H <sub>100</sub>
No disease	0.038 (0.023)	0.000	650 (5)	0.992
Diseases 1, 2	0.003 (0.095)	0.000	381 (187)	0.982
Diseases 1, 2, 3	-0.011 (0.122)	0.018	165 (151)	0.956

<u>B. Modeling the Transmission of Measles among Mountain Gorillas and Trackers: September 2000</u> During a workshop designed to develop a set of tools optimized for wildlife disease risk assessment in conservation programs (Armstrong and Seal 2000), a group of experts led by wildlife epidemiologist Dr. Laura Hungerford (U. Maryland and collaborator with Drs. Miller and Lacy) developed a detailed model of measles transmission using the STELLA simulation environment. A graphical depiction of the model is shown in Figure 1. While preliminary, the model proved extremely valuable as a means to visualize the process, identify the critical control points, and identify relationships that may not have been immediately obvious. Moreover, with some refinement to the model algorithms and additional field data, the model could provide valuable quantitative insight into the nature of measles transmission and, therefore, assist in conservation measures designed to limit this transmission. Figure 1. STELLA model of the transmission of measles among mountain gorillas and human trackers. See Armstrong and Seal (2000) for a detailed discussion of this model and STELLA.

#### 8. Experimental Methods and Design

Our proposed stochastic disease model, tentatively entitled *OUTBREAK*, may be used as a separate MS Windows<sup>®</sup> modeling environment or, alternatively, incorporated as a module to the PVA modeling package *VORTEX* (see below). *OUTBREAK* would model S-E-I-R – style disease dynamics, where exposed individuals (designated E) would be tracked as well as the susceptible, infectious and recovered (resistant) individuals discussed previously. The basic conceptual algorithms of Anderson (1982) and May (1986) will be used to construct the model. The prevalence of infectious disease in a wildlife population is dependent on the number of individuals already infected, as well as on the numbers of susceptible and exposed individuals. To model infectious processes, the state of each individual in the population would be tracked, and the probabilities of transition among states would be specified as functions of the number of individuals currently in each state and of other relevant parameters such as contact rate and the latent period of infection. Multiple iterations of a given dataset would be used to generate mean population characteristics as model output for analysis.



We envision the following graphical design for *OUTBREAK*, to be built using Visual Basic:

As the user clicks on different elements of the model or, alternatively, selects one of the many corresponding model tabs, the <u>Description</u> window will give general information on the specific model element (disease state or transition) along with the appropriate equations that make up the mathematical treatment of that element. Moreover, the <u>Variable Input</u> window will show the fields (composed of drop-down boxes, radio buttons, etc.) necessary to parameterize the elements. In this way, as the user moves through the graphical depiction of the model, a complete specification of the epidemiological disease model will be complete.

The mathematical algorithms will be programmed using Visual C++ and will run on a simulated daily time-step in order to model the details of disease transmission dynamics. In addition, relatively simple demographic information such as breeding rates and non-disease mortality for general sex-specific stages (juveniles, sub-adults, and adults) will be user-specified and used to project total population size. In addition to basic disease analysis, we intend to allow the user to include vaccination as a means of controlling disease dynamics. Model output across multiple scenarios would include real-time graphical depictions of metrics like the relative mean proportion of the population within a given disease state, mean population size, etc.

In order to test the model, we intend to develop a set of test cases using detailed epidemiological data from the literature. Preliminary searches suggest that appropriate data for natural wildlife populations are difficult to obtain, so we may modify our approach to use data from domestic livestock or perhaps even

human populations to test our product. As the basic disease processes across population types are similar, we are confident that *OUTBREAK* will have wide applicability and, therefore, can use diverse test datasets.

In addition to using *OUTBREAK* as a standalone application, the user will have the option to link the model with the popular PVA package *VORTEX* (Lacy 2000b; Miller and Lacy 1999). *VORTEX* is an individual-based stochastic simulation that requires highly specific and detailed data on a variety of demographic and other parameters of the population under consideration. Input data includes mean demographic rates for reproduction, survival, and dispersal; random variation among individuals that experience demographic events; variation in population-wide rates over time; episodic catastrophes that impact survival and/or reproduction; changes in and effects of genetic diversity; breeding systems; habitat limitations; dispersal among local populations; and managed harvest, supplementation, or translocation. Almost all demographic rates can be constant over time, can change over time, or can be specified to be functions of population density, age, sex, degree of inbreeding, other individual characteristics of the population. We are currently completing the migration of this popular software package, used around the world in both intensive research and advanced academic applications, to a flexible and powerful MS Windows<sup>®</sup> environment.

If the user intends to use *VORTEX* to investigate the projected viability of small wildlife populations impacted by disease, *OUTBREAK* will be called up to parameterize the disease of concern, and this information would then be passed on to *VORTEX* in order to allow modification of population demographic rates as a function of an individual's disease state. In this way, an individual's demographic behavior will change over the duration of the simulation as they are exposed to the infectious agent, contract the disease, and later acquire resistance (if applicable for the disease of concern).



events listed below the timeline decrease N.

The module should link directly to *VORTEX* immediately after the end of one time cycle, i.e., before the next cycle's breeding and subsequent mortality events (see timeline above). At this stage, we are less clear on how mortality should be handled; *OUTBREAK* could evaluate total (disease-caused and natural) mortality after receiving information from *VORTEX*, or alternatively the reverse could occur given the proper integration of data input files. Initial development will focus on this problem in order to achieve the most realistic simulation of disease-based population dynamics. In particular, we want to be able to control the rate of non-disease mortality as a function of the time of a disease event within a given year and, at the same time, the distribution of individual states during the year and at the end of the 12-month time cycle. As a result, mortality within *OUTBREAK* may well be defined on a monthly (or perhaps even daily) cycle while similar rates on *VORTEX* are defined on the standard annual cycle. As long as probabilities are defined on the appropriate timescale, with proper conversions made when necessary in

the internal code, these separate timescales of analysis will not adversely impact the integrity of the calculations.

All other aspects of population dynamics unrelated to disease – annual variation in demographic rates, catastrophic events that dramatically reduce reproduction and/or survival, dispersal and migration between metapopulations – will be handled directly within *VORTEX*. This flexibility will allow the user to develop any number of sophisticated population viability modeling scenarios with or without the additional complexity of detailed infectious disease epidemiology, and to graphically compare the results. Consequently, we will develop a versatile PVA modeling environment that is of considerably greater depth than other packages currently available. Perhaps even more importantly, we will have developed an individual-based model of wildlife disease epidemiology for broad use by the wildlife disease ecology and veterinary community.

Completion of this project will require the periodic inclusion and close coordination of a team of experienced and respected researchers in the fields of population biology, wildlife disease epidemiology, and software application programming. Collaboration will proceed largely through periodic meetings of selected group members to discuss details of product conceptualization, software development, and field testing.

#### **Cited References**

- Anderson, R.M. 1982. Transmission dynamics and control of infectious disease agents. *In* Population Biology of Infectious Diseases (R.M. Anderson and R.M. May, eds.), pp. 149-176. Berlin: Springer.
- Anderson, R.M., and R.M. May (eds.). 1982. Population Biology of Infectious Diseases. Berlin: Springer.
- Anderson, R.M., and R.M. May, 1991. Infectious Diseases of Humans. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Armstrong, D., and U.S. Seal (eds.). 2000. Disease Risk Workshop II: Final Report. Apple Valley, MN: Conservation Breeding Specialist Group (SSC/IUCN).
- Armstrong, D., and U.S. Seal (eds.). 2001. Disease Risk Workshop III: Final Report. Apple Valley, MN: Conservation Breeding Specialist Group (SSC/IUCN).
- Ballou, J.D. 1993. Assessing the risks of infectious diseases in captive breeding and reintroduction programs. Journal of Zoo and Wildlife Medicine 24:327-335.
- Barlow, N.D. 1995. Critical evaluation of wildlife disease models. *In*: Ecology of Infectious Diseases in Natural Populations (B.T. Grenfell and A.P. Dobson, eds.), pp. 230-259.
- Beissinger, S.R., and M.I. Westphal. 1998. On the use of demographic models of population viability in endangered species management. Journal of Wildlife Management 62:821-841.
- Beissinger, S.R., and D.R. McCullough (eds.). 2002. Population Viability Analysis. Chicago: University of Chicago Press.
- Boyce, M.S. 1992. Population viability analysis. Annual Reviews of Ecology and Systematics 23:481-506.
- Brook, B.W., J. O'Grady, A.P. Chapman, M.A. Burgman, H.R. Akçakaya, and R. Frankham, 2000. Predictive accuracy of population viability analysis in conservation biology. Nature 404:385-387.
- Clark, T.W. and R.L. Wallace. 1998. Understanding the human factor in endangered species recovery: An introduction to human social processes. Endangered Species Update 15:2-9.

- Clement, J.C., M.E. King, M.D. Salman, T.E. Wittum, H.H. Casper, and K.G. Odde. 1995. Use of epidemiologic principles to identify risk factors associated with the development of diarrhea in calves of five beef herds. JAVMA 207:1334-1338.
- Gilpin, M.E., and M.E. Soulé. 1986. Minimum viable populations: processes of extinction. *In* Conservation Biology: The Science of Scarcity and Diversity (M.E. Soulé, ed.), pp. 19-34. Sunderland, Massachusetts: Sinauer Associates.
- Grenfell, B. T., and A. P. Dobson. 1995. Ecology of infectious diseases in natural populations. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Groom, M.J., and M.A. Pascual. 1998. The analysis of population persistence: An outlook on the practice of viability analysis. *In*: Conservation Biology for the Coming Decade (P.L. Fiedler and P.M. Kareiva, eds.), pp. 4-27. New York: Chapman & Hall.
- Hamilton, S., and H. Moller. 1995. Can PVA models using computer packages offer useful conservation advice? Sooty shearwaters *Puffinus griseus* in New Zealand as a case study. Biological Conservation 73:107-117.
- Herrero, S., P. S. Miller, and U. S. Seal. 2000. Population and habitat viability assessment (PHVA) workshop for the grizzly bear of the Central Rockies Ecosystem (*Ursus arctos horribilis*). Apple Valley, MN: Conservation Breeding Specialist Group (SSC/IUCN).
- Hess, G. 1996. Disease in metapopulations models: Implications for conservation. Ecology 77:1617-1632.
- Jennings, M., R. Beiswinger, S. Corn, M. Parker, A. Pessier, B. Spencer, and P.S. Miller (eds.). 2001. Population and Habitat Viability Assessment for the Wyoming Toad (*Bufo baxteri*). Final Workshop Report. Apple Valley, MN: Conservation Breeding Specialist Group (SSC/IUCN).
- Lacy, R.C. 2000a. Considering threats to the viability of small populations using individual-based models. Ecological Bulletins 48:39-52.
- Lacy, R.C. 2000b. Structure of the *VORTEX* simulation model for population viability analysis. Ecological Bulletins 48:191-203.
- Lacy, R.C. and P.S. Miller. 2002. Incorporating human populations and activities into PVA. *In*: Population Viability Analysis: Assessing Models for Recovering Endangered Species (Beissinger, S. and D. McCullough, eds.). In press. Chicago: University of Chicago Press.
- Li, M.Y., J.R. Graef, L. Wang, and J. Karsai. 1999. Global dynamics of a SEIR model with varying total population size. Mathematical Biosciences 160:191-213.
- Lyles, A.M., and A.P. Dobson. 1993. Infectious disease and intensive management: Population dynamics, threatened hosts, and their parasites. Journal of Zoo and Wildlife Medicine 24:315-326.
- MacDiarmid, S.C. 1993. Risk analysis and the importation of animals and animal products. Rev. Sci. Tech. Off. Int. Epiz. 12:1093-1107.
- May, R.M. 1986. Population biology of microparasitic infections. *In*: Mathematical Ecology: An Introduction (T.G. Hallam and S.W. Levin, eds.), pp. 405-442. New York: Springer-Verlag.
- McCarty, C.W., and M.W. Miller. 1998. A versatile model of disease transmission applied to forecasting bovine tuberculosis dynamics in white-tailed deer populations. Journal of Wildlife Diseases 34:722-730.
- Miller, P.S. and R. C. Lacy. 1999. *VORTEX*: A Stochastic Simulation of the Extinction Process. Version 8 User's Manual. Apple Valley, MN: Conservation Breeding Specialist Group (SSC/IUCN).

- Miller, P.S. and R.C. Lacy. Metamodels for risk assessment. *In*: Experiments in Consilience: Social and Scientific Challenges to Biodiversity Conservation. (F.R. Westley and P.S. Miller, eds.), in review. Washington, DC: Island Press.
- Nyhus, P.J., F.R. Westley, R.C. Lacy, and P.S. Miller. 2002. A role for natural resource social science in biodiversity risk assessment. Society & Natural Resources (in press).
- Pickett, S.T.A., W.R. Burch Jr, and J.M. Grove. 1999. Interdisciplinary research: Maintaining the constructive impulse in a culture of criticism. Ecosystems 2:302-307.
- Possingham, H.P. 1995. The practical application of population viability analysis for conservation planning. In: Conserving Biodiversity: Threats and Solutions (Bradstock, R.A., T.D. Auld, D.A. Keith, R.T. Kingsford, D. Lunney, and D.P. Sivertsen, eds.), pp. 292-299. NSW, Australia: Surrey Beatty and Sons.
- Pucek, Z., I. Udina, U.S. Seal, and P.S. Miller (eds.). 1996. Population and Habitat Viability Assessment for the European Bison (*Bison bonasus*). Apple Valley, MN: Conservation Breeding Specialist Group (SSC/IUCN).
- Redman, C.L. 1999. Human dimensions of ecosystem studies. Ecosystems 2:296-298.
- Reed, J.M., L.S. Mills, J.B. Dunning, E.S. Menges, K.S. KcKelvey, R. Frye, S.R. Beissinger, M.-C. Anstett, and P.S. Miller. 2002. Emerging issues in population viability analysis. Conservation Biology 16:7-19.
- Scott, S., and C. J. Duncan. 1998. Human Demography and Disease. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Shaffer, M.L. 1981. Minimum population sizes for species conservation. Bioscience 31:131-134.
- Sjögren-Gulve, P., and T. Ebenhard (eds.). 2000. The Use of Population Viability Analyses in Conservation Planning. Ecological Bulletins 48.
- Soulé, M.E. (ed.). 1987. Viable Populations for Conservation. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Trist, E. 1983. Referent organizations and the development of interorganizational domains. Human Relations 36:269-284.
- Wear, D.N. 1999. Challenges to interdisciplinary discourse. Ecosystems 2:299-301.
- Werikhe, S., L. Macfie, N. Rosen, and P. S. Miller. 1998. Can the mountain gorilla survive? Population and habitat viability assessment workshop for *Gorilla gorilla beringei*. Apple Valley, MN: Conservation Breeding Specialist Group (SSC/IUCN).
- Westley, F. and P.S. Miller, eds. Experiments in Consilience: Social and Scientific Challenges to Biodiversity Conservation. In review. Island Press: Washington, DC.
- Westley, F. and H. Vredenburg. 1996. Rethinking sustainability: Criteria for aligning economic practice with environmental protection. Journal of Management Inquiry 5(2):104-119.
- Wisdom, M.J., and L.S. Mills. 1997. Sensitivity analysis to guide population recovery: Prairie-chickens as an example. Journal of Wildlife Management 61:302-312.
- Wolff, P.L., and U.S. Seal. 1993. Implications of infectious disease for captive propagation and reintroduction of threatened species. Journal of Zoo and Wildlife Medicine 24:229-230.
- Woodford, M.H. 1993. International disease implications for wildlife translocation. Journal of Zoo and Wildlife Medicine 24: 265-270.





Version 0.95 BETA

Programming by JP Pollak

Design by JP Pollak, Philip Miller, Bob Lacy, and Patti Bright

# **A.** Population Demographic Parameters

A1. What is the window of breeding within each year? First day of breeding (0 - 365):

Last day of breeding:

- A2. At what age do individuals begin breeding? (Integer between 0 and maximum age)
- A3. At what age do individuals stop breeding? (Integer between 0 and maximum age)
- A4. What is the basic species life history?

	A / S	Ε	Ι	<b>R</b> / <b>V</b>	
Mortality					
0 – 1					])
Subadult					
Adult male					Proportion
Adult female					
Fecundity					
% breeding					J
# litters / year					Integer
Litter size					

A5. What are the initial population distributions? [Percentages or actual integers]

	A / S	Ε	Ι	<b>R</b> / V
0 - 1				
Subadult				
Adult male				
Adult female				

- A6. What is the initial population size? (Integer greater than 0)
- A7. What is the carrying capacity (K) of the population? (Integer greater than 0)
- A8. How do you want to enforce the carrying capacity each year?
  - \_\_\_\_\_ Maintain K for each day of the year OR
  - \_\_\_\_\_ Apply K once per year on day X: \_\_\_\_\_
# **B.** Population Demographic Parameters

# Infectious Disease of Concern

(For multiple diseases to be modeled, photocopy this section as necessary)

	<u>Note:</u> Where appropriate, many of these parameters can be defined as more descriptive functions of, for example, age of the individual, sex, season, genotype, population density, etc. In addition, the user may give a mean estimate or a descriptive statistical distribution with a mean and variance.
B1.	<ul> <li>What is the primary mode of transmission? (Check all that apply)</li> <li>O Direct horizontal transfer between individuals of the species of concern?</li> <li>O Indirect horizontal transfer:</li> <li>Through the environment?</li> <li>Through a vector?</li> <li>O Vertically transmitted from:</li> <li>Sire?</li> <li>Dam?</li> <li>O Sexually transmitted?</li> </ul>
B2.	At what age (in days) does an individual become susceptible?
B3.	Of those individuals that are the appropriate age, what proportion becomes susceptible? (Probability between 0 and 1)
B4.	What is the average proportion of the population that is encountered each day? (Proportion between 0 and 1)
В5.	If encountered by an infected individual, what is the probability of transmission? (Probability between 0 and 1)
B6.	What is the average encounter rate per day with an outside disease source? (Probability between 0 and 1)
B7.	What is the incubation (latent) period of the infection (in days)?         (Integer between 0 and maximum age)
B8.	What is the probability that an infected individual becomes infectious?
B9.	What is the proportion of individuals that remain chronically infectious?         (Probability between 0 and 1)
B10	. What is the minimum amount of time (in days) an individual will remain infectious?
B11	. What is the maximum amount of time (in days) an individual will remain infectious?
B12	After reaching the minimum amount of time for being infectious, what is the probability of recovering and becoming resistant? (Probability between 0 and 1)

- B13. After reaching the minimum amount of time for being infectious, what is the probability of returning to the susceptible state? (Probability between 0 and 1)
- B14. What proportion of the individuals that recover acquire permanent immunity? (Proportion between 0 and 1)
- B15. For those that do not acquire permanent immunity, how long (in days) do they remain resistant? (Integer between 0 and maximum age)

# **C. Disease Management Options**

C1.	If animals are to be added to the population by supplementation, what percentage of the supplemented individuals are: Susceptible animals?	
	Exposed animals, but not yet infectious?	
	Infectious animals?	
	Immune animals?	
C2.	Do you vaccinate your population for protection against this disease?	
	If Yes: Vaccinate at a specified time interval (in days) OR Vaccinate when minimum disease prevalence is reached (Proportion)	
C3.	What proportion of the population do you vaccinate from each age class? Newborn Subadult	
	Adult (Proportion between 0 and 1)	
C4.	What is the efficacy of the vaccine? (Proportion between 0 and 1)	
C5.	For how many days does the vaccine remain effective? (Integer; 0 if permanent)	

# **D. Glossary**

**Carrying Capacity** – The equilibrium number of individuals of a species that an area or defined habitat can support.

**Contact Rate** – The average frequency per unit time with which infected individuals contact, or otherwise put themselves in a position to transmit an infection to, susceptible individuals.

**Disease** – The debilitating effects of infection by a parasite; sometimes incorrectly used to refer to the disease-causing parasite. It is possible for a host to be infected by a parasite but show no symptoms of the disease.

**Efficacy** – An index of potency of a drug or treatment, usually estimated as the average proportion of parasites in any host killed by a single dose or short-term course of the treatment.

**Endemic** – A parasite whose prevalence does not exhibit wide fluctuations through time in a defined location.

**Epidemic** – A sudden, rapid spread or increase in the prevalence or intensity of a parasite or disease. An epidemic is often the result of a change in circumstances which favor pathogen transmission such as a rapid increase in host population density, or the introduction of a new parasite (or genetic strain of a parasite) to a previously unexposed host population.

**Epizootic** – The sudden spread of a parasite or disease through a non-human population; equivalent to an epidemic in human populations.

**Fecundity** – The capacity of a population to produce offspring; also used to describe quantitative measures of per capita reproductive rate.

Immunity – The ability to combat infection or disease due to the presence of antibodies or activated cells.

Incubation Period – The time that elapses between infection with a parasite and the onset of disease.

Infection – The presence of a parasite within a host, where it may or may not cause disease.

**Infectious Disease** – Disease caused by infection with a parasite which can be transmitted from one individual to another, either directly (e.g., measles) or indirectly, by a vector (e.g., malaria).

**Latent Period** – The period when an individual is infected but not yet capable of transmitting the infection.

Mortality – The death rate in a population.

**Pandemic** – A widely distributed epidemic.

Panzootic – A widely distributed epizootic, often affecting more than one host species.

**Parasite** – An organism exhibiting a varying but obligatory dependence on another organism, it host, which is detrimental to the survival and/or fecundity of the host.

**Prevalence** – The proportion of the host population with infection or disease, often expressed as a percentage. A measure of how widespread an infection or disease is.

**Resistance** – The ability to resist infection by a parasite.

Transmission – The process by which a parasite passes from a source of infection to a new host.

**Vaccine** – A sterile liquid medium containing avirulent strains of a specific parasite and often an adjuvant, introduced into the body of a susceptible individual to stimulate the production of antibodies and thus induce active artificial immunity against that parasite. May contain live attenuated parasite strains or killed parasites (or parts thereof).

# Incorporating Epidemiological Models of Disease into Models of Wildlife Population Viability Using *VORTEX*<sup>1</sup>

Philip S. Miller, Conservation Breeding Specialist Group Robert C. Lacy, Department of Conservation Biology, Brookfield Zoo Jonathan D. Ballou, National Zoological Park / Smithsonian Institution

### An Introduction to Population Viability Analysis

Under almost any set of circumstances, wildlife populations will fluctuate in size over time (Figure 1). These fluctuations result from random variation acting on a set of processes that, acting together, determine the dynamics of population growth. Numbers of individuals comprising a given population are determined largely by specified rates of reproduction, survival, and dispersal in addition to the ecological limitations of habitat carrying capacity. Variation in these rates is influenced by processes both intrinsic (demographic stochasticity, genetic drift and/or inbreeding depression, or deviations in age or social structure) and extrinsic (environmental variation and catastrophic events) to the population (Shaffer 1981).



**Figure 1.** Census data showing annual fluctuations in estimated population size for Hawaii's palila, *Loxioides bailleui*. Figure adapted from (Ellis, S., et.al. 1992.).

Disease can be an important force in modulating many of the processes that drive wildlife population dynamics. Diseases can directly survival and reproductive success, and they can also be a major influence in the specification of annual variation in demographic rates. Perhaps more

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> Revised and updated based on Lacy, R.C. 2000. Integrating considerations of disease into population viability analysis with *VORTEX*, in *Disease Risk Workshop Final Report* (D. Armstrong and U.S. Seal, editors). Apple Valley, MN: Conservation Breeding Specialist Group (SSC/IUCN).

subtly, disease can influence growth dynamics by altering the genetic, social, and age structures of populations.

While random fluctuations in size are a normal part of wildlife population dynamics, reductions in mean population size brought about by human activities can result in a greatly increased risk of extinction through the action of stochastic variation in demographic rates. This synergistic interaction between population size and stochastic extinction risk is summarized in the "extinction vortex" concept of Gilpin and Soulé (1986). Population Viability Analysis (PVA) is a technique for applying the extinction vortex concept by examining the threats to persistence of wildlife populations (Boyce 1992; Lacy 1993/4; Groom and Pascual 1998). PVA starts with a model of the forces that drive population change and then assesses population performance under a specified set of conditions (Figure 2). PVA can use empirical, analytical, or simulation methods, but most PVAs rely on simulation to assess the interacting affects of a large number of complex processes. The primary use of PVA is to estimate the probability of extinction of a population, the mean time to extinction, or other measures of population performance such as growth rate, stability, or genetic diversity. A comparison of such measures of population viability for a variety of different scenarios then allows analysis of which threats are most important. In addition, management alternatives can be compared to determine the most effective conservation strategies.



**Figure 2.** Generalized diagram of the forces shaping population dynamics and their inclusion in population viability analysis.

One widely used PVA model is *VORTEX* (Miller and Lacy 1999; Lacy 2000)<sup>2</sup>. *VORTEX* is an individual-based simulation, which requires highly specific and detailed data on a variety of demographic and other population parameters. It considers mean demographic rates for reproduction, survival, and dispersal; random variation among individuals that experience demographic events; variation in population-wide rates over time; episodic catastrophes that

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> *VORTEX* is available from CBSG (http://www.cbsg.org ; office@cbsg.org) or from R.C. Lacy (http://www2.netcom.com/~rlacy)

impact survival and/or reproduction; changes in and effects of genetic diversity; breeding systems; habitat limitations; dispersal among local populations; and managed harvest, supplementation, or translocation. Almost all rates in *VORTEX* can be constant over time, can change over time, or can be specified to be functions of population density, age, sex, inbreeding, or other characteristics of individuals or the population.

### Modeling Disease in VORTEX

Before we discuss the mechanisms by which the effects of disease on population viability can be incorporated into population viability analysis, a brief digression on the general nature of disease modeling in PVA is warranted. In general, opinions differ widely on how disease is to be considered in models of wildlife population viability – or whether it is to be handled at all. For example, in a recent workshop on mountain gorilla population viability and conservation (Werihke et al. 1998), wildlife veterinarians predicted that the remnant populations may be subjected to several kinds of disease: an influenza-like disease that occurs in 10% of the years and causes 5% mortality; a severe viral disease that has a frequency of 10% and causes 25% mortality and a 20% reduction in breeding for the year; and a cyclic viral disease of the reproductive system that has a frequency of 4% and causes 25% mortality and total breeding failure. The PVA showed that the hypothesized diseases would substantially threaten the long-term prospects for gorilla population persistence. As a consequence of this finding, recommended conservation actions included measures to reduce the probability of disease spreading from ecotourists to the gorillas, and increased surveillance for disease.

In contrast, a PVA workshop on the Florida panther (Seal and Lacy 1989) represents the opposite extreme (but perhaps a more typical case) in how disease can be considered in wildlife risk assessment processes. Workshop participants reached a consensus that "Disease epidemics are possible, … but we have no data that would allow estimation of the probability. … Thus, we have omitted any consideration [of disease] … from our modeling." However, the omission of disease from consideration was further justified by: "It is unlikely that the subspecies would survive a catastrophe that caused substantial mortality." It is clear that including processes that are only partially understood and/or quantified will lead to a less precise prediction of future population performance. By the same token, their inclusion into models of the extinction process can help to foster a better understanding of the population data in hand. Perhaps more importantly, comparative simulation modeling of alternative scenarios can be a valuable tool to help biologists make better population management decisions in the face of uncertain knowledge and limited resources. PVA practitioners are faced with choosing how to use the available tools on a case-by-case basis.

The effects of diseases on population viability can be integrated into the *Vortex* PVA modeling system in a variety of ways and at various levels. Disease can be modeled as a static effect on demographic rates, as a cause of variation in rates (including episodic catastrophes), as a cause of trends in rates over time, as a dynamic process in which the impacts are functions of population or individual characteristics, or as an infectious process in which the probability of an individual becoming diseased is a function of the number of other diseased individuals.

#### Disease as a static effect on population dynamics

When considered simply as a static effect in the PVA model, disease mortality may be one component of the mean "natural" or "baseline" mortality. Similarly, disease may be one determinant of the baseline reproductive rates (e.g., disease can be one cause of breeding failure). Disease may also be a mechanism of inbreeding depression (e.g., if inbred individuals are more likely to die of disease), or of density dependent breeding or survival. Incorporation of the impacts of disease into a PVA model as a static effect does not require that disease be identified as a cause of the natural rates. But it does require that the "baseline" rates used in a PVA model are estimated under conditions that are likely to prevail into the future, and assumes that there will be constant risks of and effects of disease. Consideration of disease as a static effect in a PVA model may be appropriate for endemic diseases that are always present as a risk in the population.

### Disease as a source of variation in demographic rates

Disease that is episodic over time can be incorporated into PVA models as a contributing cause of either random variation in demographic rates over time (environmental variation) or periodic catastrophes in which survival or reproduction are temporarily impacted. For example, Figure 3 shows an example of a simulation produced by *Vortex* for a population that normally has a high potential growth rate (due to high reproduction and low mortality), but which is subjected to catastrophes that occur randomly in 2% of the years and cause 25% mortality. To analyze the effects of a disease causing such a pattern, the simulation would be repeated 100s of times, and the mean result and range of results tallied.



**Figure 3.** A simulated population subjected to a disease epidemic with a 2% annual probability of occurrence that causes an additional 25% mortality across all age classes. Arrows indicate incidence of epidemics.

Within *VORTEX*, the probability of and impacts of a disease catastrophe can be specified to be a function of population characteristics. As an example, Figure 4 shows the results of a simulation in which the effects of a catastrophe on survival are a function of population density: survival drops steeply when the population size approaches the ecological carrying capacity of the habitat.



**Figure 4.** A simulated population subjected to a disease epidemic in which individual survival is a function of population density. Arrows indicate incidence of epidemics.

### Disease as a driver of temporal trends

Epidemiological models can generate predictions for cyclical or other temporal patterns for disease (Grenfell and Dobson 1995; Scott and Duncan 1998). With this type of information at the user's disposal, *VORTEX* can model the consequent temporal trends in demographic rates. The trends might be linear (due to increasing disease prevalence), cyclical, or follow some other specified time course. Figure 5 shows a trajectory for a simulated population that is impacted by a disease that occurs are regular 10-year intervals and reduces survival by an additional 20% over "baseline" values.

Incorporating a temporal pattern of disease into a PVA requires prior development of a model of the dynamics of the disease. The time series or pattern of disease outbreaks generated by the epidemiological model then must be used to specify the temporal trend in affected demographic rates. This approach would be appropriate for modeling the impacts on population viability of a disease that follows a known and regular time course. For example, outbreaks of smallpox caused a 5-year cycle in mortality in rural England from 1557 to 1812, and whooping cough mortality in London showed a 3-year cycle with increasing amplitude from 1700 to 1812 (Scott and Duncan 1998).



**Figure 5.** A simulated population trajectory in which disease epidemics occur at 10-year intervals.

### Disease as an infectious process

The prevalence of infectious disease is obviously dependent on the number of already infected individuals, as well as on the numbers of susceptible and resistant individuals. To model infectious processes, the state (e.g., susceptible, latent infection, active infection, recovered, or resistant) of each individual would be tracked, and the probabilities of transition among states would be specified as functions of the numbers of individuals currently in each state (Figure 6). Transition probabilities may also be dependent on other individual characteristics, such as sex, age, inbreeding or specific genotypes. The demographic rates would then be specified to be functions of the individual. For example, infected individuals may suffer 50% higher mortality or depressed breeding rates.



**Figure 6.** The S-I-R-R model of disease epidemiology. Individuals move from one state to another over time with defined probabilities. Resistant individuals are those who are no longer susceptible to re-infection. Recovered individuals are no longer infected, but can be re-infected.

In order to incorporate an infectious disease process into methods for population viability analysis, there must first be developed a model of disease transmission and recovery. The likelihood of transmission under various conditions must be known (or estimated), as well as the likelihood of recovery and the development of resistance. Unlike the simpler methods of modeling disease in PVA described above, infectious processes cannot yet be incorporated into *VORTEX* simulations (as of version 8). Further modifications of the *VORTEX* program could provide such modeling capabilities.

# **Literature Cited**

- Anderson, R.M. 1982. Transmission dynamics and control of infectious disease agents. *In* Population Biology of Infectious Diseases (R.M. Anderson and R.M. May, eds.), pp. 149-176. Berlin: Springer.
- Armstrong, D., and U.S. Seal (editors). 2000. Disease Risk Workshop Final Report. Apple Valley, MN: Conservation Breeding Specialist Group (SSC/IUCN).
- Boyce, M.S. 1992. Population viability analysis. Annual Reviews of Ecology and Systematics 23:481-506.
- Ellis, S., K. Hughes, C. Kuehler, R. Lacy, U.S. Seal. 1992. 'Alala, Akohekohe, and Palila Population and Habitat Viability Assessment Reports. IUCN/SSC Captive Breeding Specialist Group: Apple Valley, MN
- Gilpin, M.E., and M.E. Soulé. 1986. Minimum viable populations: processes of extinction. *In* Conservation Biology: The Science of Scarcity and Diversity (M.E. Soulé, ed.), pp. 19-34. Sunderland, Massachusetts: Sinauer Associates.
- Grenfell, B. T., and A. P. Dobson. 1995. Ecology of infectious diseases in natural populations. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Lacy, R. C. 1993. VORTEX: A computer simulation model for Population Viability Analysis. Wildlife Research 20:45-65.
- Lacy, R. C. 1993/1994. What is Population (and Habitat) Viability Analysis? Primate Conservation 14/15:27-33.
- Lacy, R.C. 2000. Considering threats to the viability of small populations. Ecological Bulletins 48 (in press).
- May, R.M. 1986. Population biology of microparasitic infections. *In* Mathematical Ecology: An Introduction (T.G. Hallam and S.W. Levin, eds.), pp. 405-442. New York: Springer-Verlag.
- Miller, P.S. and R. C. Lacy. 1999. VORTEX: A Stochastic Simulation of the Extinction Process. Version 8 User's Manual. Apple Valley, MN: Conservation Breeding Specialist Group (SSC/IUCN).
- Scott, S., and C. J. Duncan. 1998. Human Demography and Disease. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge.
- Seal, U.S. and R. C. Lacy. 1989. Florida Panther Population Viability Analysis. Report to the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. IUCN SSC Captive Breeding Specialist Group, Apple Valley, Minnesota.
- Werikhe, S., L. Macfie, N. Rosen, and P. S. Miller (editors). 1998. Can the Mountain Gorilla

Survive? Population and Habitat Viability Assessment Workshop for *Gorilla gorilla beringei*. Apple Valley, MN: Conservation Breeding Specialist Group (SSC/IUCN).



# **Input Data Required for VORTEX**

 Do you want to incorporate inbreeding depression? Yes or No \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ Yes, if you think inbreeding might cause a reduction in fertility or survival No, if you think inbreeding would not cause any negative impact

If you answered "Yes" to Question 1), then we need to specify the severity of the impacts of inbreeding by answering the following two questions:

### 1A)How many lethal equivalents exist in your population?

"Lethal equivalents" is a measure of the severity of effects of inbreeding on juvenile survival. The median value reported by Ralls et al. (1988) for 40 mammal populations was 3.14. The range for mammals reported in the literature is from 0.0 (no effect of inbreeding on survival) to about 15 (most inbred progeny die).

### 1B) What proportion of the total lethal equivalents is due to recessive lethal alleles?

This question relates to how easily natural selection would remove deleterious genes if inbreeding persisted for many generations (and the population did not become extinct). In other words, how well does the population adapt to inbreeding? The question is really asking this: what fraction of the genes responsible for inbreeding depression would be removed by selection over many generations? Unfortunately, little data exist for mammals regarding this question; data on fruit flies and rodents, however, suggest that about 50% of the total suite of inbreeding effects are, on average, due to lethal alleles.

2) Do you want environmental variation in reproduction to be correlated with environmental variation in survival? Yes or No \_\_\_\_\_

Answering "Yes" would indicate that good years for breeding are also good years for survival, and bad years for breeding are also bad years for survival. "No" would indicate that annual fluctuations in breeding and survival are independent.

- 3) Breeding system: Monogamous or Polygynous?
- 4) At what age do females begin breeding?
- 5) At what age do males begin breeding?

For each sex, we need to specify the age at which the typical animal produces its first litter. The age at which they "begin breeding" refers to their age when the offspring are actually born, and not when the parents mate.

6) Maximum breeding age?

When do they become reproductively senescent? VORTEX will allow them to breed (if they happen to live this long) up to this maximum age.

- 7) What is the sex ratio of offspring at birth? What proportion of the year's offspring are males?
- 8) What is the maximum litter size?
- 9) In the average year, what proportion of adult females produce a litter?

#### 10) How much does the proportion of females that breed vary across years?

Ideally, we need this value specified as a standard deviation (SD) of the proportion breeding. If longterm quantitative data are lacking, we can estimate this variation in several ways. At the simplest intuitive level, in about 67% of the years the proportion of adult females breeding would fall within 1 SD of the mean, so (mean value) + SD might represent the breeding rate in a typically "good" year, and (mean value) – SD might be the breeding rate in a typically "bad" year.

#### 11) Of litters that are born in a given year, what percentage have litters of ...

1 offspring? 2 offspring? 3 offspring? 4 offspring? 4 offspring? \_\_\_\_\_ (and so on to the maximum litter size).

#### 12) What is the percent survival of females ...

from birth to 1 year of age? from age 1 to age 2? \_\_\_\_\_ from age 2 to age 3? (no need to answer this if they begin breeding at age 2) from age *x* to age x+1, for adults?

#### 13) What is the percent survival of males ...

from birth to 1 year of age? from age 1 to age 2? \_\_\_\_\_ (no need to answer this if they begin breeding at age 2) from age x to age x+1, for adults?

#### 14) For each of the survival rates listed above, enter the variation across years as a standard deviation:

For females, what is the standard deviation in the survival rate from birth to 1 year of age? from age 1 to age 2? from age 2 to age 3? (no need to answer this if they begin breeding at age 2) from age x to age x+1, for adults?

For males, what is the standard deviation in the survival rated from birth to 1 year of age? from age 1 to age 2? from age 2 to age 3? \_\_\_\_\_ (no need to answer this if they begin breeding at age 2) from age x to age x+1, for adults?

#### 15) How many types of catastrophes should be included in the models?

You can model disease epidemics, or any other type of disaster, which might kill many individuals or cause major breeding failure in sporadic years.

#### 16) For each type of catastrophe considered in Question 15),

What is the probability of occurrence?

(i.e., how often does the catastrophe occur in a given time period, say, 100 years?) What is the reproductive rate in a catastrophe year relative to reproduction in normal years? \_\_\_\_\_\_ (i.e., 1.00 = no reduction in breeding; 0.75 = 25% reduction; 0.00 = no breeding) What is the survival rate in a catastrophe year relative to survival in normal years? \_\_\_\_\_\_ (i.e., 1.00 = no reduction in breeding; 0.75 = 25% reduction; 0.00 = no breeding)

17) Are all adult males in the "pool" of potential breeders each year? Yes or No

(Are there some males that are excluded from the group of available breeders because they are socially prevented from holding territories, are sterile, or otherwise prevented from having access to mates?)

### 18) If you answered "No" to Question 17), then answer at least one of the following:

What percentage of adult males is available for breeding each year? \_\_\_\_\_\_ or

What percentage of adult males typically sires a litter each year?

or

How many litters are sired by the average breeding male (of those that sired at least one litter)?

#### 19) What is the current population size?

(We will assume that the population starts at a "stable age distribution", rather than specifying ages of individual animals in the current population.)

- 22) Over how many years will habitat be lost or gained?

23) What percentage of habitat will be lost or gained each year?

24) Will animals be removed from the wild population (to bolster captive stocks or for other reasons)? Yes or No

If "Yes", then,			
At what annual interval?			
For how many years?			
How many female juveniles?	1-2 year old females?	2-3 year old females?	
adult females? will be rer	noved each time.		
How many male juveniles?	_ 1-2 year old males?	2-3 year old males?	_ adult
males? will be removed e	ach time.		

25) Will animals be added to the	population (from captive stock	(s, etc.)? Yes or No	
If "Yes", then,			
At what annual interval?			
For how many years?			
How many female juveniles?	1-2 year old females?	2-3 year old females?	
adult females? will	be added each time.		
How many male juveniles?	1-2 year old males?	2-3 year old males?	_adult
males? will be adde	d each time		

Note: VORTEX has the capability to model even more complex demographic rates, if a user thinks that greater specificity is needed. For example, breeding or survival rates could be specified as functions of age. Contact Philip Miller, Program Officer with CBSG if you would like to learn more about this additional flexibility.

# ANIMAL MOVEMENTS AND DISEASE RISK

A WORKBOOK

4th Edition

South Africa

18-21 November 2002

DECISION ANALYSIS MODELING SOFTWARE

# Zoo Risk Assessment meeting, June 28-30, 2001

Barbara Corso, DVM, MS USDA/APHIS/VS/Centers for Epidemiology and Animal Health Ft Collins, CO

## Topics

- 1.) @Risk software, used for risk assessments
- 2.) Spatial Analysis projects, including vector mapping

## @Risk

Software distributed by Palisades Corporation. Add on to a spreadsheet, with different versions for different spreadsheet programs. We use Excel, with the appropriate version of @Risk.

Start with the workbook we have used here. When you get to the point where you are doing a quantitative assessment using a spreadsheet program, @Risk is helpful because it allows you to enter input values as distributions, rather than point estimates. Many different distributions are available, including many that are fairly standard for certain circumstances.

Entering distributions allows you to account for variability of a factor within a population, or for uncertainty in our knowledge about the level of that factor. @Risk will run hundreds or thousands of iterations, using values from within the distributions that were selected as inputs. It will calculate the probability of the outcome(s) of interest, producing probability curves rather than a single value for the final risk. Sensitivity analysis and other outputs are also available. And you can change the input values to account for mitigation efforts - vaccination, testing, etc. - and recalculate to see what effect that activity has on the output distribution.

Be aware that explanation and presentation of results can be difficult for some audiences to grasp. Sometime people want a single number. We usually present results in the format of: '95% of the simulations resulted in less than one introduction of disease in 10,000 years'.

Various types of @Risk projects we have been involved in:

- 1.) Import trade risk assessments: Assess risk of importing agents through importation of various commodities. For example, assess the risk of introducing Hog Cholera (Classical Swine Fever) into the US through importation of swine semen from the European Union.
- 2.) Introduction of agents through other means: Assess the probability of agent spread given certain management factors, e.g., risk of introducing hog cholera into the US swine industry by feeding food waste to swine
- 3.) Spread of an agent: Assess the probability of agent spread to new population, e.g., likelihood of spread of TB from deer to cattle in Michigan, or the likelihood of introduction of rabies into Hawai'i under new protocol.

### **Spatial Analysis**

There are a couple of questions that come up frequently when we are asked to do spatial analysis projects. Can we relate cases to environment, and then use that information to assess risk or predict future problems? And can we look at location, distance and direction, analyze what we see, and determine whether proximity to something (like a case, or a slaughter plant, or a swamp) affects probability of infection.

Some data needed for spatial analyses of these types:

Information about location and number of cases,

Spatial base information: Data are available from different sources - satellite images; thematic layers showing environmental factors (such as elevation, precipitation, vegetation, slope), roads and waterways, and many other spatial base layers. Others will be important landmarks specific to a particular issue, and will likely need to be added, such as slaughter plants or feeding grounds.

There are a number of analytical tools to help you make sense of the data – statistical packages, modeling programs, techniques like cluster analysis. Use those tools to see whether the location or distribution of cases is related to environmental factors or spatially related to other landmarks.

Specific spatial analysis projects we are involved in:

1.) Vector mapping: Development of a database describing the geographic distribution of ticks in the US. This is focused on ticks that affect livestock, poultry and wildlife. Information is being collected from many sources. Once that is complete, we will look at environmental factors - elevation, vegetation, precipitation, slope - to see if presence is related to environmental factors. It is anticipated that this effort will assist in the future when ticks or tick-borne diseases of concern are identified, because some of the groundwork on where vectors may be found, or may survive and thrive, will have already been done.

This effort is also related to the invasive species initiative. There is a great deal of concern about potential introduction of new vectors, or new diseases transmitted by vectors. Knowledge about what ticks are currently present, and where might exotic species gain a foothold, will be valuable for evaluations of potential consequences.

- 2.) Additional Tick related projects: Geographic analysis of ticks and tick-borne diseases in Morocco; Analysis of ecological factors associated with the introduction of *Boophilus* spp ticks in the Lower Rio Grande Valley of Texas
- 3.) Mosquitoes related projects: Ecological analysis of West Nile Virus infection in equids; Spatial and spectral habitat characterization of enzootic foci of VEE virus activity in Venezuela, Colombia and Peru

4.) Projects related to other vectors: Midges - Bluetongue in North and South Dakota and Nebraska; Flies - Vesicular Stomatitis, Equine Infectious Anemia

# ANIMAL MOVEMENTS AND DISEASE RISK

A WORKBOOK

4th Edition

South Africa

18-21 November 2002

**DECISION ANALYSIS EXAMPLES** 

# **MOUNTAIN GORILLA**

**Participants:** Laura Hungerford, Patty Klein, Mike Cranfield, Genevieve Dumonceaux, Barbara Corso, Mark Atkinson, Shelley Alexander, Dominic Travis, Tom Meehan, Jim Else, Sue Brown

Step 1: Tell the story –

- Bwindi Park Gorillas
- Tracker & guides are the source
- Scabies originates from the local community i.e., one of the few diseases that does NOT stem from the trackers & guides
- The diseases of most concern for the gorillas is measles (affects population for a few months) and/or tuberculosis (continually affects population for years)

Step 2: Define the question –

- f) Risk of transmission of disease into the gorillas
- g) What is the likelihood of introducing Scabies into habituated gorilla population?
- h) What is the likelihood of introducing Cryptosporidia into habituated gorilla population?
- i) What is the likelihood of introducing measles into habituated gorilla population?
- j) What is the likelihood of introducing measles into habituated gorilla population?

Species of Concern: 1) Humans, 2) Gorillas, 3) Other (Habituated) Primates

Step 3: T = Tracker, G = Guide

Human movement = solid line arrows Gorilla = dashed arrows

- Cryptosporidia Vector



Procedures done at all points:

(a) At T & G/Community/Agricultural Activity Area – community health programs (basic), basic vet care

(b) At the Staging/Health Screening Area – educational program

Step 4 – Identify all potential hazards for Scabies:

Source Point	Hazard Risk Assessment
Trackers & Guides	Low
Local Community	High
Livestock/Crops	None
Staging/Health Screening Area	Low
Tourist Lodging	None
Gorilla Habitat	High

Step 4 - Scabies Transmission:

Low probability of transmission rate = dashed arrows Medium probability of transmission rate = solid line arrows High probability of transmission rate = double line arrows HT = Human Transmission/Movement GT = Gorilla Transmission/Movement



Step 4 – Identify all potential hazards for Cryptosporidia:

Source Point	Hazard Risk Assessment
Trackers & Guides	High
Local Community	Low
Livestock/Crops	High
Staging/Health Screening Area	Low
Tourist Lodging	Low
Gorilla Habitat	High

Step 4 - Cryptosporidia Transmission:

Low probability of transmission rate = dashed arrows Medium probability of transmission rate = solid line arrows High probability of transmission rate = double line arrows HT = Human Transmission/Movement GT = Gorilla Transmission/Movement



# ASSUMPTIONS/CONCLUSIONS:

- Not critically significant
- 4 Critical Control Points (CCPs) = Gorilla to Livestock; Livestock to T&G; staging area to gorillas; and T&G to Gorilla

Step 4 – Identify all potential hazards for Measles:

Source Point	Hazard Risk Assessment
Trackers & Guides	Low (> 0)
Local Community	Low (> 0)
Livestock/Crops	None
Staging/Health Screening Area	Low (> 0)
Tourist Lodging	Low (> 0)
Gorilla Habitat	None

Step 4 - Measles Transmission:

Low probability of transmission rate = dashed arrows Medium probability of transmission rate = solid line arrows High probability of transmission rate = double line arrows HT = Human Transmission/Movement GT = Gorilla Transmission/Movement



- Risk of transmission is extremely low
- CCP is within Gorilla population
- Need to modify destination population

Step 4 – Identify all potential hazards for **Tuberculosis**:

Source Point	Hazard Risk Assessment
Trackers & Guides	Medium/Moderate
Local Community	Medium/Moderate
Livestock/Crops	Low
Staging/Health Screening Area	Medium/Moderate
Tourist Lodging	Low
Gorilla Habitat	None

Step 4 - Tuberculosis Transmission:

Low probability of transmission rate = dashed arrows Medium probability of transmission rate = solid line arrows High probability of transmission rate = double line arrows HT = Human Transmission/Movement GT = Gorilla Transmission/Movement



## ASSUMPTIONS/CONCLUSIONS:

- Extremely low risk of transmission
- No effective treatment  $\rightarrow$  significant health problem and morbidity/mortality
- Critical Control Point (CCP) is within the community and gorilla to gorilla

## **ACTIONS:**

### Community CP

- 1. Increase community and public health programs/education
- 2. Employee health programs
- 3. Increased livestock health programs/education
- 4. create buffer zone

### Staging Area CP

- 1. Tracker and guide personal hygiene
- 2. Tourist personal hygiene

### Habitat CP

- 1. Vaccination program
- 2. Treatment

### Stella Working Group Summary of Diagram

We developed this model as a working draft to allow the group to become familiar with the Stella program.

### Set up:

Modeled as transmission of disease among gorillas, transmission among children of trackers, transmission among other children in the village, trackers used as route of exposure of measles to the gorillas.

### **Assumptions:**

- 1. Gorilla contract measles (from humans and each other)
- 2. Humans act as fomites for the measles virus
- 3. Trackers developed immunity to measles as adults
- 4. Naive populations = all but trackers
- 5. Negligible impact of transmission tracker to tracker.
- 6. Closed populations
- 7. Random contacts
- 8. Random dispersal
- 9. Human adults that are not trackers are irrelevant (only trackers have contact with gorillas)
- 10. That all people infected recovered to immunity.

### **Identifying data:**

Other kids = 5000 Trackers kids = 700 Trackers = 110 Gorilla population = 320 Noncontact gorillas = 60 Contact gorillas = 260 Vaccine programs as 98% efficacy for gorillas and people Contact rate sick child to child of 1:10 Contact rate for trackers to gorillas in contact groups of 1:20 Contact rate for noncontact gorillas to contact gorillas of 1:2

# Run and evaluate scenarios:

- 1. Measles goes through the population
- 2. Vaccinate just the trackers children
- 3. Vaccinate all children
- 4. Vaccinate gorillas only

# **Results of simulations:**

Vaccinating the gorillas only was the most effective way to minimize the incidence of measles in the gorilla population.

Reevaluate model again, and again and again.....

# **Summary:**

## Process of developing the model:

Identification of the problems to address.

Assemble a group individuals with diverse experience and training.

Employ someone who has a clue about Stella.

Begin to draw a conceptual picture of the problems you are addressing.

Develop assumptions.

Determine control points of the model.

Input data into the model (if possible real data used and otherwise bet estimates).

Run the model.

Evaluate the data, model and graphs resulting.

Reevaluate the appropriateness of the data entered and the relationships created.

Continue to refine and improve the model (to infinity).

## Question:

Does this approach provide benefit in exploring a complex problem?

## Answer:

Yes, it allows you to visualize the process, identify critical control points, and identify relationships that may not have been obvious, clearer idea of information needed to acquire.

# Question:

Can this approach give you a quantitative answer?

## Answer:

With more refinement and enough good data it may give you quantitative answers.

# Decision Tree Cost Analysis- Human → Gorilla measles

# **Description and Interpretation**

Three scenarios were assessed. The first involved an assumed prevalence in the in-contact human population of 10% and screening for the disease in these individuals is conducted by cursory inspection and observation of clinical signs only. The sensitivity of this method was assumed to be 50%. The cost was assumed to be zero.

COST?	parameter	(p)	value	comment
-	Prevalence	0.1	\$0	
+	Test	0.5	\$0	Cursory observation for signs of infection
-	Viability	0.01	\$0	
-	transmission	0.5	\$0	
TOTAL		0.0002	\$0	

Scenario one- physical inspection of trackers

In the second scenario the screening test method used was a hypothetical PCR of clinical samples from every in-contact human. The sensitivity of this method was assumed to be 99%. Specificity was assumed to be 75%. Additional assumptions were that positive in-contact humans were excluded from the workforce. Based on this specificity the probability of a false positive individual is 0.225. This created the requirement for an additional 25 (rounded) individuals on the workforce and resulting labor cost increases. This was also based on a daily application of the method- may not be realistic at all. The effect of frequency of PCR testing (daily, weekly, quarterly, annually) on the sensitivity value of the method (not of the test) must be considered. The costs incurred were the test costs and the labor costs. The probability of disease (agent) introduction into the gorilla population was reduced to 0.00005 in this model.

Scenario two- PCR testing of trackers

COST?	parameter	(p)	value	comment
-	Prevalence	0.1	0	
+	Test	0.01	25 x 100	PCR oronasal swab
			75	Labor increase
-	Viability	0.01	0	
-	transmission	0.5	0	
TOTAL		0.00005	2575	Per test application
				(day?/week/quarter)
				Need to figure change in sensitivity
				due to change in testing frequency

Assumptions:

• 100 tracker/guards at \$3/day

- PCR test cost = \$20
- Increased sensitivity of PCR increases false + % so that (p) = 0.225 therefore workforce required increases

The third scenario implemented vaccination of the in-contact humans. Vaccine efficacy was assumed to be 99% and therefore prevalence dropped to 1%. Testing was limited to inspection for signs and therefore 50% efficacy was assumed. This approach dropped cost to a one-time investment of \$2.00 per vaccinate or initial \$200 outlay. The risk probability went to 0.000025.

Scenario three- vaccination of trackers

COST?	parameter	(p)	value	comment
-	Prevalence	0.01	200	Vaccine efficacy reduces prevalence
				to 1%
+	Test	0.5	0	Inspection for signs
-	Viability	0.01	0	
-	transmission	0.5	0	
TOTAL		0.0000	200	One time cost
		25		

Assumptions:

- Vaccine  $cost = \frac{2}{dose}$
- 100 trackers/guards vaccinated
- Vaccination reduces prevalence to 1%

# Recommendations

Based on these data and models it is clearly more cost beneficial to vaccinate the in-contact humans, however the use of PCR as screening test reduces risk of measles introduction five-fold. These conclusions appear to differ from those obtained using the Stella model, however, this disparity may be due to the complexity of the Stella model, that is- the addition of temporal considerations and additional variables which may effect the outcome.

## Decision Analysis III: Capillaria infestation in Whooping Cranes

*What is the risk of introducing a non-North American Capillaria species into Florida from released captive birds?* 

All numbers used in this Decision Tree are <u>best guesses</u> based on the experience of the whooping crane program and input from the group members.

-It was estimated, based on WC flock history, that there is a 30% infection rate of this capillaria in release age birds.

-It was GUESSED that the fecal sedimentation test used will pick up 60% of infected birds. -It was estimated that treatment with ivermeetin and fenbendazole is 80% successful.

Definition of a False + : Bird infected with the NORTH AMERICAN species of Capillaria, not the foreign species for which we are evaluating risk.

# Conclusion: There is a 0.024 (0.010 + 0.014 false negatives) probability of introduction of the non-North American capillaria when these birds are moved.

Decision Tree Cost Analysis- *Capillaria* → Cranes

# **Description and Interpretation**

The originally presented decision tree was expanded to include all possible animal treatment/test groups and their associated probabilities. Also to calculate the number of animals that are eligible for release in each scenario and associated costs.

Assumptions:

- Capture/handling costs = \$610 (60 hours effort)
- Fecal sedimentation = 10/tst x 24 = 240
- Re-testing has same sensitivity and specificity as initial
- Treatment = 3/ bird x 24 = 72
- Re-treatment has same efficacy as original
- No mortality due to handling the birds

Scenario one- Test, treat all, test:	\$610+240+240+72	\$1162 (\$552)*
Release ~19	(p)= 0.024	[\$29/bird]

\*Capture and handling occurs annually for health screening. Therefore the figure in parentheses excludes this cost and actual cost per bird is based on this figure.

The above scenario represents the current protocol of testing and treatment. This results in approximately 19 birds eligible for release at a cost of \$29.00 per bird and a probability that a released bird is Capillaria infested of 0.024 (~2:100).

The probability of false negative birds is calculated as follows. (See Decision Tree)

(p) False Negative =  $(0.3 \times 0.4 \times 0.2 \times 0.4) + (0.3 \times 0.6 \times 0.2 \times 0.4) = 0.024$ 

The number of release candidates was calculated as follows. (See Decision Tree)

# = (true negatives + false negatives)= [(24 x (0.11+0.45+0.077+0.12)] + [24 x 0.024]]

Scenario two- Treat, Test: \$610+240+72		\$922 (\$312)
Release ~ 19	(p)= 0.024	[\$16.42/bird]

Scenario two modifies the decision tree by excluding the first test requirement. This collapses the second decision node (i.e., eliminates the first test-decision point) and results in the same probability that a released bird is Capillaria infested for a lower cost. The probability is the same because no management decision is made based on the first test.

Scenario three- Test, treat+, retest	t+: \$610+21+240+70	\$941 (\$331)
Release ~ 23	(p)= 0.12	[\$14.39/bird]

This scenario assumes only those birds testing positive on the first test are treated and re-tested. This ends the branching of the decision tree at all negative test levels. Therefore, the result is an increase in the number of release candidates, however, the probability of false negatives increases as well. As a result the cost per release candidate is further reduced.

Scenario four- Treat only: \$610+72		\$682 (\$72)
Release ~ 24	(p)=0.06	[\$3/bird]

The treatment-only scenario simplifies decision tree analysis by eliminating all test nodes. The number of release candidates is maximized, the cost per candidate is minimized but the probability of releasing an infested bird is 2.5 times greater than scenarios one and two.
Scenario five- Treat x 2: \$610-	+610+72+72	\$1364 (\$72)
Release ~ 24	(p)=0.012	[\$31.41/bird]

Scenario five illustrates the effect of adding a second treatment. The cost increases because of the additional handling required but risk decreases five-fold. It should be noted that twice the handling increases health risk for the birds. The added handling cost could also be eliminated by treatment at time of release.

Concluding Comments: The costs incurred in the above scenarios should be kept in perspective of the overall cost of the program estimates of \$40,000/ bird. Costs due to other disease management will be incurred as well.

# ANIMAL MOVEMENTS AND DISEASE RISK

A WORKBOOK

4th Edition

South Africa

18-21 November 2002

**COST ANALYSIS SPREADSHEET** 

### **Decision Analysis III: Capillaria infestation in Whooping Cranes**

*What is the risk of introducing a non-North American Capillaria species into Florida from released captive birds?* 

All numbers used in this Decision Tree are <u>best guesses</u> based on the experience of the whooping crane program and input from the group members.

-It was estimated, based on WC flock history, that there is a 30% infection rate of this capillaria in release age birds.

-It was GUESSED that the fecal sedimentation test used will pick up 60% of infected birds.

-It was estimated that treatment with ivermectin and fenbendazole is 80% successful.

Definition of a False + : Bird infected with the NORTH AMERICAN species of Capillaria, not the foreign species for which we are evaluating risk.

# Conclusion: There is a 0.024 (0.010 + 0.014 false negatives) probability of introduction of the non-North American capillaria when these birds are moved.

Decision Tree Cost Analysis- *Capillaria* → Cranes

### **Description and Interpretation**

The originally presented decision tree was expanded to include all possible animal treatment/test groups and their associated probabilities. Also to calculate the number of animals that are eligible for release in each scenario and associated costs.

Assumptions:

- Capture/handling costs = \$610 (60 hours effort)
- Fecal sedimentation =  $10/tst \times 24 = 240$
- Re-testing has same sensitivity and specificity as initial
- Treatment = 3/ bird x 24 = 72
- Re-treatment has same efficacy as original
- No mortality due to handling the birds

Scenario one- Test, treat all, test:	\$610+240+240+72	\$1162 (\$552)*
Release ~19	(p)= 0.024	[\$29/bird]

\*Capture and handling occurs annually for health screening. Therefore the figure in parentheses excludes this cost and actual cost per bird is based on this figure.

The above scenario represents the current protocol of testing and treatment. This results in approximately 19 birds eligible for release at a cost of \$29.00 per bird and a probability that a released bird is Capillaria infested of 0.024 (~2:100).

The probability of false negative birds is calculated as follows. (See Decision Tree)

(p) False Negative =  $(0.3 \times 0.4 \times 0.2 \times 0.4) + (0.3 \times 0.6 \times 0.2 \times 0.4) = 0.024$ 

The number of release candidates was calculated as follows. (See Decision Tree)

# = (true negatives + false negatives)= [(24 x (0.11+0.45+0.077+0.12)] + [24 x 0.024]]

Scenario two- Treat, Test: \$6	10+240+72	\$922 (\$312)
Release ~ 19	(p)= 0.024	[\$16.42/bird]

Scenario two modifies the decision tree by excluding the first test requirement. This collapses the second decision node (i.e., eliminates the first test-decision point) and results in the same probability that a released bird is Capillaria infested for a lower cost. The probability is the same because no management decision is made based on the first test.

Scenario three- Test, treat+, ret	test+: \$610+21+240+70	\$941 (\$331)
Release ~ 23	(p)= 0.12	[\$14.39/bird]

This scenario assumes only those birds testing positive on the first test are treated and re-tested. This ends the branching of the decision tree at all negative test levels. Therefore, the result is an increase in the number of release candidates, however, the probability of false negatives increases as well. As a result the cost per release candidate is further reduced.

Scenario four- Treat only: \$	610+72	\$682 (\$72)
Release ~ 24	(p)=0.06	[\$3/bird]

The treatment-only scenario simplifies decision tree analysis by eliminating all test nodes. The number of release candidates is maximized, the cost per candidate is minimized but the probability of releasing an infested bird is 2.5 times greater than scenarios one and two.

Scenario five- Treat x 2: \$610	0+610+72+72	\$1364 (\$72)
Release ~ 24	(p)=0.012	[\$31.41/bird]

Scenario five illustrates the effect of adding a second treatment. The cost increases because of the additional handling required but risk decreases five-fold. It should be noted that twice the handling increases health risk for the birds. The added handling cost could also be eliminated by treatment at time of release.

Concluding Comments: The costs incurred in the above scenarios should be kept in perspective of the overall cost of the program estimates of \$40,000/ bird. Costs due to other disease management will be incurred as well.

ī

I,

ı.

ı

I,

ı

1

Goal of Action: Return SCI Shrike from Zoo to SC Island Identify Question: Concern for not introducing disease to SCI shrike population Identify Possible Diseases (Matrix)

h	Infectivity	Transmission	Disease
Avian TB	+	+	÷
Chlamydiosis	+	+	+
Sarcocystis	ė	ė	j
Hematozoa	i	+	i
Avian Pox	+	÷	+

# **AVIAN TUBERCULOSIS**

**CHLAMYDIOSIS** 

**AVIAN POX** 

	Ч	A	cc P C	Costs							
Prevalence	Infected	0.10	0.10		Prevalence	Infected	0.10	Prev	'alence	Infected	0.10
Liver Bx	AFB -	0.20	0.02	\$100	EBA	Negative	0.10	\$15Exa	m	No lesions	0.20
AFB Cx feces					Quar 45 days off island			Qua islar	r 45 d off- 1d		
	AFB -	06.0	0.02	\$30		Survive	0.50	\$200		No lesions	0.20
Quar 45 days off-					Isolation 30d			Isol	ation 30 d		
island	Survive	06.0	0.02	\$200	on-island	Survive	0.50	\$300n-i	sland	No lesions	0.20
Isolation 30d on-											
island	Survive	0.95	0.02	\$50	EBA	Negative	0.10	\$15			
AFB Cx feces	AFB -	06.0	0.01	\$30							
Viability of organism	Organism				Viability of	organism		Viat	oility of	Organism survives	
in environment	survives				organism in	survives		orga	mism in		
		0.80	0.01		environment		0.80	envi	ronment		0.95
Transmission	Yes	0.30	0.003		Transmission	yes	0.80	Trar	nsmission	yes	0.30
<b>Probability of</b>					<b>Probability of</b>			Prol	bability of		
infected bird at end					infected bird			infe	cted bird		
		0.003		\$410	at end		0.00016	\$260 <sup>at ei</sup>	nd		0.000228
	3	/1000					16/100,000				

# ANIMAL MOVEMENTS AND DISEASE RISK

A WORKBOOK

4th Edition

South Africa

18-21 November 2002

**MAPPING – MAPS AND GIS** 

### MAPPING - MAPS AND GIS

Maps are used to orient people to their geographic environment. At the most basic level, maps provide the spatial context necessary for defining problems, identifying risk, and assessing risk. The use of maps in workshops takes many forms and varies in sophistication. The simplest maps are drawn by hand on paper and represent features of the landscape useful for orientation. More detailed and accurate maps can be custom generated by computers, acquired from widely available software libraries (e.g., Microsoft Excel, Microsoft Encarta, Corel Quattro,), downloaded from the Internet (e.g., http://mapping.usgs.go), or copied from resources such as atlases. Finally, satellite images and aerial photographs can be acquired in hard copy and digital formats.

For many workshops, the most useful maps are hard copies that can be drawn on. Real-time computer mapping can be a very useful adjunct to hard copy maps, but this requires considerably more technical equipment and expertise. Finally, Geographical Information Systems (GIS) can be used to display, manipulate, and analyze spatial data represented on maps. Again, the added level of sophistication, computer hardware requirements, and expertise limit the utility of GIS for workshop applications.

In most workshop settings, a variety of maps at different resolutions and detail should be used to provide spatial context at several scales. A thoughtful pre assessment of information requirements by workshop organizers and participants allows for the acquisition of maps that are relevant to workshop topics. As an example on the following pages we provide a series of maps at different scales showing the location and features of the Channel Islands in California that might be useful for assessing disease risks of foxes that inhabit the islands. These maps were created in less than 1 hour using Microsoft Excel and a free Internet library provided by the U.S. Geological Service.









Recent developments in *Decision Science* suggest that a much wider range of strategies can be deployed in risk analysis. A flexible procedure is the *Ordered Weighted Average* (OWA), recently introduced to GIS. This is a procedure that is somewhat related to Weighted Linear Combination, but which is capable of producing a virtually infinite variety of strategies as illustrated below.

The OWA procedure results in decision strategies that vary along two dimensions: risk and tradeoff. At one extreme, we have a solution which assumes the least risk possible and consequently allows no tradeoff (the lower left corner of this triangle).



The problem of reintroduction of species and disease transmission lends itself to analysis with Geographic Information Systems (GIS), as these are inherently spatial processes. Many advances in GIS modelling capabilities have occurred. This document briefly details the construction of a probability or risk surface for the reintroduction of a species.

New advances include the inclusion of probabilities and Bayesian inference in developing predictive surfaces. Also, modules such as Cellular Automata, may be of interest as this offers a mechanism to spatially describe the movement of a disease in the landscape. Rules of transmission may be assigned to a start site and the behavior of the disease will depend on these rules and the values of surrounding cells.

Probability surfaces can be used to assess the risk of disease for animals at different sites on the landscape. To begin, one must identify the factors that influence disease risk (i.e. trails on which guides take tourists to see Gorillas). The relationship between this metric (trails) and disease spread must be specified (See Figure 1,2, and 3). For example, does the likelihood of infection

decrease with distance to the trails. GIS allows the user to develop a surface of distance to trails. This surface can then be restated as a probability of disease transmission. The relationship can be specified in a number of ways (linear monotonically decreasing, sigmoidal monotonically increasing, etc) in the GIS. The example below simply applied a linear monotonically decreasing probability of infection, as a function of distance from any of the human factors (e.g.trails). A Bayesian modelling module combines all probability surfaces into a final risk surface (Figure 4), which may then be used to determine the associated risk for each potential reintroduction site.

The use of GIS to determine the landscape attributes that may underlay disease transmission or occurrence is illustrated in brief in the final two images and table. In the example below a reclassed aspect map (classed into 45 degree increments) is used as the base layer. Sites where diseased individuals occurred can be used to extract information from the base layer. The extracted data can be exported into text for analysis with other software (see final table). Some landscape attributes, such as slope, aspect, elevation, vegetation, distance to water, etc. may be important to disease transmission. These underlying spatial phenomena may guide the movement of animals or disease across the landscape, and may be revealed through the GIS analysis. Interactions between spatial phenomena, such as aspect and another species may be examined using internal multi-variate analytical procedures (linear regression, logistic regression). As mentioned below, statistical assumptions and sampling protocol are key in the interpretation of the results of the spatial data.



Figure 1: Probability of Infection Relative to Distance from Towns

Figure 2: Probability of Infection Relative to Distance from Known Infections



Figure 3: Probability of Infection (Distance from Trail Networks - Vectors of Infection)



**Figure 4:** Composite Probability of Infection (Combining All Probability Surfaces)Potential Release Sites are shown as hatched areas, points indicate known infected individuals



Figure 5: Aspect Surface with Known Diseased Individuals (Black Circles)



Totals extracted from diseased\_individuals based on aspect\_rcl (Can be imported into other statistical software

Category	Total
North	3.000000
Northeast	2.000000
East	3.000000
Southeast	1.000000
South	5.000000
Southwest	1.000000
West	3.000000
Northwest	3.000000
Background	0.000000

Statistical analysis may also be conducted within the GIS, however, it is imperative that your spatial sampling of individuals (e.g. diseased bodies) is not biased. For example, if the only individuals found dead are those within 5 km of towns, this may be a function of higher risk of infection near towns, or it may be that areas outside 5km were not surveyed for dead individuals. Be aware of the statistical assumptions of the tests you apply. In many cases, assumptions such as independence are violated by the spatial autocorrelation in sampling.

# ANIMAL MOVEMENTS AND DISEASE RISK

A WORKBOOK

4th Edition

South Africa

18-21 November 2002

**IUCN GUIDELINES AND POLICY STATEMENTS** 

# **IUCN Position Statement on Translocation of Living Organisms:**

### INTRODUCTIONS, REINTRODUCTIONS AND RE-STOCKING

Prepared by the Species Survival Commission in collaboration with the Commission on Ecology, and the Commission on Environmental Policy, Law and Administration Approved by the 22nd Meeting of the IUCN Council, Gland, Switzerland, 4 September 1987

### FOREWORD

This statement sets out IUCN's position on translocation of living organisms, covering introductions, reintroductions and re-stocking. The implications of these three sorts of translocation are very different so the paper is divided into four parts dealing with Introductions, Re-introductions, Re-stocking and Administrative Implications, respectively.

### **DEFINITIONS:**

**Translocation** is the movement of living organisms from one area with free release in another. The three main classes of translocation distinguished in this document are defined as follows:

- **Introduction** of an organism is the intentional or accidental dispersal by human agency of a living organism outside its historically known native range.
- **Re-introduction** of an organism is the intentional movement of an organism into a part of its native range from which it has disappeared or become extirpated in historic times as a result of human activities or natural catastrophe.
- **Re-stocking** is the movement of numbers of plants or animals of a species with the intention of building up the number of individuals of that species in an original habitat.

Translocations are powerful tools for the management of the natural and man made environment which, properly used, can bring great benefits to natural biological systems and to man, but like other powerful tools they have the potential to cause enormous damage if misused. This IUCN statement describes the advantageous uses of translocations and the work and precautions needed to avoid the disastrous consequences of poorly planned translocations.

### PART I

# **INTRODUCTIONS**

### BACKGROUND

Non-native (exotic) species have been introduced into areas where they did not formerly exist for a variety of reasons, such as economic development, improvement of hunting and fishing, ornamentation, or maintenance of the cultures of migrated human communities. The damage done by harmful introductions to natural systems far outweighs the benefit derived from them. The introduction and establishment of alien species in areas where they did not formerly occur, as an accidental or intended result of human activities, has often been directly harmful to the native plants and animals of many parts of the world and to the welfare of mankind.

The establishment of introduced alien species has broken down the genetic isolation of communities of co-evolving species of plants and animals. Such isolation has been essential for the evolution and maintenance of the diversity of plants and animals composing the biological wealth of our planet. Disturbance of this isolation by alien species has interfered with the dynamics of natural systems causing the premature extinction of species. Especially successful and aggressive invasive species of plants and

animals increasingly dominate large areas having replaced diverse autochthonous communities. Islands, in the broad sense, including isolated biological systems such as lakes or isolated mountains, are especially vulnerable to introductions because their often simple ecosystems offer refuge for species that are not aggressive competitors. As a result of their isolation they are of special value because of high endemism (relatively large numbers of unique local forms) evolved under the particular conditions of these islands over a long period of time. These endemic species are often rare and highly specialised in their ecological requirements and may be remnants of extensive communities from bygone ages, as exemplified by the Pleistocene refugia of Africa and Amazonia.

The diversity of plants and animals in the natural world is becoming increasingly important to man as their demands on the natural world increase in both quantity and variety, notwithstanding their dependence on crops and domestic animals nurtured within an increasingly uniform artificial and consequently vulnerable agricultural environment.

Introductions, can be beneficial to man. Nevertheless the following sections define areas in which the introduction of alien organisms is not conducive to good management, and describe the sorts of decisions that should be made before introduction of an alien species is made.

To reduce the damaging impact of introductions on the balance of natural systems, governments should provide the legal authority and administrative support that will promote implementation of the following approach.

### **Intentional Introduction**

### General

- 1. Introduction of an alien species should only be considered if clear and well defined benefits to man or natural communities can be foreseen.
- 2. Introduction of an alien species should only be considered if no native species is considered suitable for the purpose for which the introduction is being made.

### **Introductions to Natural Habitats**

3. No alien species should be deliberately introduced into any natural habitat, island, lake, sea, ocean or centre of endemism, whether within or beyond the limits of national jurisdiction. A natural habitat is defined as a habitat not perceptibly altered by man. Where it would be effective, such areas should be surrounded by a buffer zone sufficiently large to prevent unaided spread of alien species from nearby areas. No alien introduction should be made within the buffer zone if it is likely to spread into neighbouring natural areas.

### Introduction into Semi-natural Habitat

4. No alien species should be introduced into a semi-natural habitat unless there are exceptional reasons for doing so, and only when the operation has been comprehensively investigated and carefully planned in advance. A semi-natural habitat is one which has been detectably changed by man's actions or one which is managed by man, but still resembles a natural habitat in the diversity of its species and the complexity of their interrelationships. This excludes arable farm land, planted ley pasture and timber plantations.

### Introductions into Man-made Habitat

5. An assessment should be made of the effects on surrounding natural and semi-natural habitats of the introduction of any species, sub-species, or variety of plant to artificial, arable, ley pasture or other predominantly monocultural forest systems. Appropriate action should be taken to minimise negative effects.

### Planning a Beneficial introduction

- 6. Essential features of investigation and planning consist of:
  - an assessment phase culminating in a decision on the desirability of the introduction;

- an experimental, controlled trial;
- the extensive introduction phase with monitoring and follow-up.

### THE ASSESSMENT PHASE

Investigation and planning should take the following factors into account:

a) No species should be considered for introduction to a new habitat until the factors which limit its distribution and abundance in its native range have been thoroughly studied and understood by competent ecologists and its probable dispersal pattern appraised.

Special attention should be paid to the following questions:

- What is the probability of the exotic species increasing in numbers so that it causes damage to the environment, especially to the biotic community into which it will be introduced?
- What is the probability that the exotic species will spread and invade habitats besides those into which the introduction is planned? Special attention should be paid to the exotic species' mode of dispersal.
- How will the introduction of the exotic proceed during all phases of the biological and climatic cycles of the area where the introduction is planned? It has been found that fire, drought and flood can greatly alter the rate of propagation and spread of plants.
- What is the capacity of the species to eradicate or reduce native species by interbreeding with them?
- Will an exotic plant interbreed with a native species to produce new species of aggressive polyploid invader? Polyploid plants often have the capacity to produce varied offspring some of which quickly adapt to and dominate, native floras and cultivars alike.
- Is the alien species the host to diseases or parasites communicable to other flora and fauna, man, their crops or domestic animals, in the area of introduction?
- What is the probability that the species to be introduced will threaten the continued existence or stability of populations of native species, whether as a predator, competitor for food, cover, breeding sites or in any other way? If the introduced species is a carnivore, parasite or specialised herbivore, it should not be introduced if its food includes rare native species that could be adversely affected.

b) There are special problems to be considered associated with the introduction of aquatic species. These species have a special potential for invasive spread.

- Many fish change trophic level or diet preference following introduction, making prediction of the results of the re-introduction difficult. Introduction of a fish or other species at one point on a river system or into the sea may lead to the spread of the species throughout the system or area with unpredictable consequences for native animals and plants. Flooding may transport introduced species from one river system to another.
- introduced fish and large aquatic invertebrates have shown a great capacity to disrupt natural systems as their larval, sub-adult and adult forms often use different parts of the same natural system.

c) No introduction should be made for which a control does not exist or is not possible. A risk-and-threat analysis should be undertaken including investigation of the availability of methods for the control of the introduction should it expand in a way not predicted or have unpredicted undesirable effects, and the methods of control should be socially acceptable, efficient, should not damage vegetation and fauna, man, his domestic animals or cultivars.

d)When the questions above have been answered and the problems carefully considered, it should be decided if the species can reasonably be expected to survive in its new habitat, and if so, if it can

reasonably be expected to enhance the flora and fauna of the area, or the economic or aesthetic value of the area, and whether these benefits outweigh the possible disadvantages revealed by the investigations.

### THE EXPERIMENTAL CONTROLLED TRIAL

Following a decision to introduce a species, a controlled experimental introduction should be made observing the following advice:

- Test plants and animals should be from the same stock as those intended to be extensively introduced.
- They should be free of diseases and parasites communicable to native species, man, his crops and domestic livestock.
- The introduced species' performance on parameters in 'the Assessment Phase' above should be compared with the pre-trial assessment, and the suitability of the species for introduction should be reviewed in light of the comparison.

### THE EXTENSIVE INTRODUCTION

If the introduced species behaves as predicted under the experimental conditions, then extensive introductions may commence but should be closely monitored. Arrangements should be made to apply counter measures to restrict, control, or eradicate the species if necessary.

The results of all phases of the introduction operation should be made public and available to scientists and others interested in the problems of introductions.

The persons or organisation introducing the species, not the public, should bear the cost of control of introduced organisms and appropriate legislation should reflect this.

### **ACCIDENTAL INTRODUCTIONS**

- 1. Accidental introductions of species are difficult to predict and monitor, nevertheless they "should be discouraged where possible. The following actions are particularly important:
  - On island reserves, including isolated habitats such as lakes, mountain tops and isolated forests, and in wilderness areas, special care should be taken to avoid accidental introductions of seeds of alien plants on shoes and clothing and the introduction of animals especially associated with man, such as cats, dogs, rats and mice.
  - Measures, including legal measures, should be taken to discourage the escape of farmed, including captive-bred, alien wild animals and newly-domesticated species which could breed with their wild ancestors if they escaped.
  - In the interest of both agriculture and wildlife, measures should be taken to control contamination of imported agricultural seed with seeds of weeds and invasive plants.
  - Where large civil engineering projects are envisaged, such as canals, which would link different biogeographical zones, the implications of the linkage for mixing the fauna and flora of the two regions should be carefully considered. An example of this is the mixing of species from the Pacific and Caribbean via the Panama Canal, and the mixing of Red Sea and Mediterranean aquatic organisms via the Suez Canal. Work needs to be done to consider what measures can be taken to restrict mixing of species from different zones through such large developments.

2. Where an accidentally introduced alien successfully and conspicuously propagates itself, the balance of its positive and negative economic and ecological effects should be investigated. If the overall effect is negative, measures should be taken to restrict its spread.

### WHERE ALIEN SPECIES ARE ALREADY PRESENT

- 1. In general, introductions of no apparent benefit to man, but which are having a negative effect on the native flora and fauna into which they have been introduced, should be removed or eradicated. The present ubiquity of introduced species will put effective action against the majority of invasives beyond the means of many States but special efforts should be made to eradicate introductions on:
  - islands with a high percentage of endemics in the flora and fauna;
  - areas which are centres of endemism;
  - areas with a high degree of species diversity;
  - areas with a high degree of other ecological diversity;
  - areas in which a threatened endemic is jeopardised by the presence of the alien.
- 2. Special attention should be paid to feral animals. These can be some of the most aggressive and damaging alien species to the natural environment, but may have value as an economic or genetic resource in their own right, or be of scientific interest. Where a feral population is believed to have a value in its own right, but is associated with changes in the balance of native vegetation and fauna, the conservation of the native flora and fauna should always take precedence. Removal to captivity or domestication is a valid alternative for the conservation of valuable feral animals consistent with the phase of their evolution as domestic animals.

Special attention should be paid to the eradication of mammalian feral predators from areas where there are populations of breeding birds or other important populations of wild fauna. Predatory mammals are especially difficult, and sometimes impossible to eradicate, for example, feral cats, dogs, mink, and ferrets.

3. In general, because of the complexity and size of the problem, but especially where feral mammals or several plant invaders are involved, expert advice should be sought on eradication.

### **BIOLOGICAL CONTROL**

1. Biological control of introductions has shown itself to be an effective way of controlling and eradicating introduced species of plants and more rarely, of animals. As biological control involves introduction of alien species, the same care and procedures should be used as with other intentional introductions.

### MICRO-ORGANISMS

 There has recently been an increase of interest in the use of micro-organisms for a wide variety of purposes including those genetically altered by man.
Where such uses involve the movement of micro-organisms to areas where they did not formerly exist, the same care and procedures should be used as set out above for other species. PART II

# THE RE-INTRODUCTION OF SPECIES\*

Re-introduction is the release of a species of animal or plant into an area in which it was indigenous before extermination by human activities or natural catastrophe. Re-introduction is a particularly useful tool for restoring a species to an original habitat where it has become extinct due to human persecution, over-collecting, over-harvesting or habitat deterioration, but where these factors can now be controlled. Re-introductions should only take place where the original causes of extinction have been removed. Reintroductions should only take place where the habitat requirements of the species are satisfied. There should be no re-introduction if a species became extinct because of habitat change which remains unremedied, or where significant habitat deterioration has occurred since the extinction.

The species should only be re-introduced if measures have been taken to reconstitute the habitat to a state suitable for the species.

The basic programme for re-introduction should consist of:

- a feasibility study;
- a preparation phase;
- release or introduction phase; and a
- follow-up phase.

### THE FEASIBILITY STUDY

An ecological study should assess the previous relationship of the species to the habitat into which the reintroduction is to take place, and the extent that the habitat has changed since the local extinction of the species. If individuals to be re-introduced have been captive-bred or cultivated, changes in the species should also be taken into account and allowances made for new features liable to affect the ability of the animal or plant to re-adapt to its traditional habitat.

The attitudes of local people must be taken into account especially if the reintroduction of a species that was persecuted, over-hunted or over collected, is proposed. If the attitude of local people is unfavorable an education and interpretive programme emphasizing the benefits to them of the re-introduction, or other inducement, should be used to improve their attitude before re-introduction takes place.

The animals or plants involved in the re-introduction must be of the closest available race or type to the original stock and preferably be the same race as that previously occurring in the area.

Before commencing a re-introduction project, sufficient funds must be available to ensure that the project can be completed, including the follow-up phase.

### THE PREPARATION AND RELEASE OR INTRODUCTORY PHASES

The successful re-introduction of an animal or plant requires that the biological needs of the species be fulfilled in the area where the release is planned. This requires a detailed knowledge of both the needs of the animal or plant and the ecological dynamics of the area of re-introduction. For this reason the best available scientific advice should be taken at all stages of a species re-introduction.

This need for clear analysis of a number of factors can be clearly seen with reference to introductions of ungulates such as ibex, antelope and deer where re-introduction involves understanding and applying the significance of factors such as the ideal age for re-introducing individuals, ideal sex ratio, season, specifying capture techniques and mode of transport to re-introduction site, freedom of both the species and the area of introduction from disease and parasites, acclimatisation, helping animals to learn to forage

in the wild, adjustment of the gut flora to deal with new forage, 'imprinting' on the home range, prevention of wandering of individuals from the site of re-introduction, and on-site breeding in enclosures before release to expand the released population and acclimatise the animals to the site. The reintroduction of other taxa of plants and animals can be expected to be similarly complex.

### **FOLLOW-UP PHASE**

Monitoring of released animals must be an integral part of any re-introduction programme. Where possible there should be long-term research to determine the rate of adaptation and dispersal, the need for further releases and identification of the reasons for success or failure of the programme.

The species impact on the habitat should be monitored and any action needed to improve conditions identified and taken.

Efforts should be made to make available information on both successful and unsuccessful re-introduction programmed through publications, seminars and other communications.

### PART III

# RESTOCKING

- 1. Restocking is the release of a plant or animal species into an area in which it is already present. Restocking may be a useful tool where:
  - it is feared that a small reduced population is becoming dangerously inbred; or
  - where a population has dropped below critical levels and recovery by natural growth will be dangerously slow; or
  - where artificial exchange and artificially-high rates of immigration are required to maintain outbreeding between small isolated populations on biogeographical islands.
- 2. In such cases care should be taken to ensure that the apparent nonviability of the population, results from the genetic institution of the population and not from poor species management which has allowed deterioration in the habitat or over-utilisation of the population. With good management of a population the need for re-stocking should be avoidable but where re-stocking is contemplated the following points should be observed:

a) Restocking with the aim of conserving a dangerously reduced population should only be attempted when the causes of the reduction have been largely removed and natural increase can be excluded.

b) Before deciding if restocking is necessary, the capacity of the area it is proposed to restock should be investigated to assess if the level of the population desired is sustainable. If it is, then further work should be undertaken to discover the reasons for the existing low population levels. Action should then be taken to help the resident population expand to the desired level. Only if this fails should restocking be used.

3. Where there are compelling reasons for restocking the following points should be observed.

a) Attention should be paid to the genetic constitution of stocks used for restocking.

• In general, genetic manipulation of wild stocks should be kept to a minimum as it may adversely affect the ability of a species or population to survive. Such manipulations

modify the effects of natural selection and ultimately the nature of the species and its ability to survive.

• Genetically impoverished or cloned stocks should not be used to re-stock populations as their ability to survive would be limited by their genetic homogeneity.

b) The animals or plants being used for re-stocking must be of the same race as those in the population into which they are released.

c) Where a species has an extensive natural range and restocking has the aim of conserving a dangerously reduced population at the climatic or ecological edge of its range, care should be taken that only individuals from a similar climatic or ecological zone are used since interbreeding with individuals from an area with a milder climate may interfere with resistant and hardy genotypes on the population's edge.

d) Introduction of stock from zoos may be appropriate, but the breeding history and origin of the animals should be known and follow as closely as possible Assessment Phase guidelines a, b, c and d (see pages 5-7). In addition the dangers of introducing new diseases into wild populations must be avoided: this is particularly important with primates that may carry human zoonoses.

e) Restocking as part of a sustainable use of a resource (e.g. release of a proportion of crocodiles hatched from eggs taken from farms) should follow guidelines a and b (above).

f) Where restocking is contemplated as a humanitarian effort to release or rehabilitate captive animals it is safer to make such releases as re-introductions where there is no danger of infecting wild populations of the same species with new diseases and where there are no problems of animals having to be socially accepted by wild individuals of the species.

### PART IV

# NATIONAL, INTERNATIONAL AND SCIENTIFIC IMPLICATIONS OF TRANSLOCATIONS

### NATIONAL ADMINISTRATION

- 1. Pre-existing governmental administrative structures and frameworks already in use to protect agriculture, primary industries, wilderness and national parks should be used by governments to control both intentional and unintentional importation of organisms, especially through use of plant and animal quarantine regulations.
- 2. Governments should set up or utilise pre-existing scientific management authorities or experts in the fields of biology, ecology and natural resource management to advise them on policy matters concerning translocations and on individual cases where an introduction, re-introduction or restocking or farming of wild species is proposed.
- 3. Governments should formulate national policies on:
  - translocation of wild species;
  - capture and transport of wild animals;
  - artificial propagation of threatened species;
  - selection and propagation of wild species for domestication; and
  - prevention and control of invasive alien species.

4. At the national level legislation is required to curtail introductions:

**Deliberate introductions** should be subject to a permit system. The system should apply not only to species introduced from abroad but also to native species introduced to a new area in the same country. It should also apply to restocking.

### Accidental introductions

- for all potentially harmful organisms there should be a prohibition to import them and to trade in them except under a permit and under very stringent conditions. This should apply in particular to the pet trade;
- where a potentially harmful organism is captive bred for commercial purposes (e.g. mink) there should be established by legislation strict standards for the design and operation of the captive breeding facilities. In particular, procedures should be established for the disposal of the stock of animals in the event of a discontinuation of the captive breeding operation;
- there should be strict controls on the use of live fish bait to avoid inadvertent introductions of species into water where they do not naturally occur.

### Penalties

5. Deliberate introductions without a permit as well as negligence resulting in the escape or introduction of species harmful to the environment should be considered criminal offences and punished accordingly. The author of a deliberate introduction without a permit or the person responsible for an introduction by negligence should be legally liable for the damage incurred and should in particular bear the costs of eradication measures and of habitat restoration where required.

### INTERNATIONAL ADMINISTRATION

### **Movement of Introduced Species Across International Boundaries**

1. Special care should be taken to prevent introduced species from crossing the borders of a neighboring state. When such an occurence is probable, the neighboring state should be promptly warned and consultations should be held in order to take adequate measures.

### **The Stockholm Declaration**

2. According to Principle 21 of the Stockholm Declaration on the Human Environment, states have the responsibility 'to ensure that activities within their jurisdiction or control do not cause damage to the environment of other states'.

### **International Codes of Practice, Treaties and Agreements**

- 3. States should be aware of the following international agreements and documents relevant to translocation of species:
  - ICES, Revised Code of Practice to Reduce the Risks from introduction of Marine Species, 1982.
  - FAO, Report of the Expert Consultation on the Genetic Resources of Fish, Recommendations to Governments No L 1980.
  - EIFAC (European Inland Fisheries Advisory Commission), Report of the Working Party on Stock Enhancement, Hamburg, FRG 1983.
  - The Bonn Convention MSC: Guidelines for Agreements under the Convention.

- The Berne Convention: the Convention on the Conservation of European wildlife and Natural Habitats.
- The ASEAN Agreement on the Conservation of Nature and Natural Resources.
- Law of the Sea Convention, article 196.
- Protocol on Protected Areas and Wild Fauna and Flora in Eastern African Region.

In addition to the international agreements and documents cited, States also should be aware of the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species of Wild Fauna and Flora (CITES). International shipments of endangered or threatened species listed in the Appendices to the Convention are subject to CITES regulation and permit requirements. Enquiries should be addressed to: <u>CITES Secretariat</u>\*\*, Case Postale 456, CH-1219 Chatelaine, Genève, Switzerland; telephone: 41/22/979 9149, fax: 41/22/797 3417.

### **Regional Development Plans**

4. International, regional or country development and conservation organisations, when considering international, regional or country conservation strategies or plans, should include in-depth studies of the impact and influence of introduced alien species and recommend appropriate action to ameliorate or bring to an end their negative effects.

### **Scientific Work Needed**

- 5. A synthesis of current knowledge on introductions, re-introductions and re-stocking is needed.
- 6. Research is needed on effective, target specific, humane and socially acceptable methods of eradication and control of invasive alien species.
- 7. The implementation of effective action on introductions, re-introductions and re-stocking frequently requires judgements on the genetic similarity of different stocks of a species of plant or animal. More research is needed on ways of defining and classifying genetic types.
- 8. Research is needed on the way in which plants and animals are dispersed through the agency of man (dispersal vector analysis).

A review is needed of the scope, content and effectiveness of existing legislation relating to introductions.

### **IUCN Responsibilities**

International organisations, such as UNEP, UNESCO and FAO, as well as states planning to introduce, re-introduce or restock taxa in their territories, should provide sufficient funds, so that IUCN as an international independent body, can do the work set out below and accept the accompanying responsibilities.

9. IUCN will encourage collection of information on all aspects of introductions, re-introductions and restocking, but especially on the case histories of re-introductions; on habitats especially vulnerable to invasion; and notable aggressive invasive species of plants and animals.

Such information would include information in the following categories:

- a bibliography of the invasive species;
- the taxonomy of the species;
- the synecology of the species; and
- methods of control of the species.

- 10. The work of the Threatened Plants Unit of IUCN defining areas of high plant endemism, diversity and ecological diversity should be encouraged so that guidance on implementing recommendations in this document may be available.
- 11. A list of expert advisors on control and eradication of alien species should be available through IUCN.

Note:

\* The section on re-introduction of species has been enhanced by the <u>Guidelines For Re-Introductions</u>

\*\* The address of the <u>CITES Secretariat</u> has been updated.

© IUCN 1996

# IUCN/SSC Guidelines For Re-Introductions

Prepared by the SSC <u>Re-introduction Specialist Group</u> \* Approved by the 41st Meeting of the IUCN Council, Gland Switzerland, May 1995

### **INTRODUCTION**

These policy guidelines have been drafted by the Re-introduction Specialist Group of the IUCN's Species Survival Commission (1), in response to the increasing occurrence of re-introduction projects worldwide, and consequently, to the growing need for specific policy guidelines to help ensure that the re-introductions achieve their intended conservation benefit, and do not cause adverse side-effects of greater impact. Although IUCN developed a Position Statement on the <u>Translocation of Living Organisms</u> in 1987, more detailed guidelines were felt to be essential in providing more comprehensive coverage of the various factors involved in re-introduction exercises.

These guidelines are intended to act as a guide for procedures useful to re-introduction programmes and do not represent an inflexible code of conduct. Many of the points are more relevant to re-introductions using captive-bred individuals than to translocations of wild species. Others are especially relevant to globally endangered species with limited numbers of founders. Each re-introduction proposal should be rigorously reviewed on its individual merits. It should be noted that re-introduction is always a very lengthy, complex and expensive process. Re-introductions or translocations of species for short-term, sporting or commercial purposes - where there is no intention to establish a viable population - are a different issue and beyond the scope of these guidelines. These include fishing and hunting activities.

This document has been written to encompass the full range of plant and animal taxa and is therefore general. It will be regularly revised. Handbooks for re-introducing individual groups of animals and plants will be developed in future.

### CONTEXT

The increasing number of re-introductions and translocations led to the establishment of the IUCN/SSC Species Survival Commission's Re-introduction Specialist Group. A priority of the Group has been to update IUCN's 1987 Position Statement on the Translocation of Living Organisms, in consultation with IUCN's other commissions.

It is important that the Guidelines are implemented in the context of IUCN's broader policies pertaining to biodiversity conservation and sustainable management of natural resources. The philosophy for environmental conservation and management of IUCN and other conservation bodies is stated in key documents such as "Caring for the Earth" and "Global Biodiversity Strategy" which cover the broad themes of the need for approaches with community involvement and participation in sustainable natural resource conservation, an overall enhanced quality of human life and the need to conserve and, where necessary, restore ecosystems. With regards to the latter, the re-introduction of a species is one specific instance of restoration where, in general, only this species is missing. Full restoration of an array of plant and animal species has rarely been tried to date.

Restoration of single species of plants and animals is becoming more frequent around the world. Some succeed, many fail. As this form of ecological management is increasingly common, it is a priority for the Species Survival Commission's Re-introduction Specialist Group to develop guidelines so that re-introductions are both justifiable and likely to succeed, and that the conservation world can learn from each initiative, whether successful or not. It is hoped that these Guidelines, based on extensive review of case - histories and wide consultation across a range of disciplines will introduce more rigour into the concepts, design, feasibility and implementation of re-introductions despite the wide diversity of species and conditions involved. Thus the priority has been to develop guidelines that are of direct, practical assistance to those planning, approving or carrying out re-introductions. The primary audience of these guidelines is, therefore, the practitioners (usually managers or scientists), rather than decision makers in governments. Guidelines directed towards the latter group would inevitably have to go into greater depth on legal and policy issues.

### **1. DEFINITION OF TERMS**

"**Re-introduction**": an attempt to establish a species(2) in an area which was once part of its historical range, but from which it has been extirpated or become extinct (3) ("Re-establishment" is a synonym, but implies that the re-introduction has been successful).

"**Translocation**": deliberate and mediated movement of wild individuals or populations from one part of their range to another.

"Re-inforcement/Supplementation": addition of individuals to an existing population of conspecifics.

"**Conservation/Benign Introductions**": an attempt to establish a species, for the purpose of conservation, outside its recorded distribution but within an appropriate habitat and eco-geographical area. This is a feasible conservation tool only when there is no remaining area left within a species' historic range.

### 2. AIMS AND OBJECTIVES OF RE-INTRODUCTION

### a. Aims:

The principle aim of any re-introduction should be to establish a viable, free-ranging population in the wild, of a species, subspecies or race, which has become globally or locally extinct, or extirpated, in the wild. It should be re-introduced within the species' former natural habitat and range and should require minimal long-term management.

### **b.** Objectives:

The objectives of a re-introduction may include: to enhance the long-term survival of a species; to re-establish a keystone species (in the ecological or cultural sense) in an ecosystem; to maintain and/or restore natural biodiversity; to provide long-term economic benefits to the local and/or national economy; to promote conservation awareness; or a combination of these.

### 3. MULTIDISCIPLINARY APPROACH

A re-introduction requires a multidisciplinary approach involving a team of persons drawn from a variety of backgrounds. As well as government personnel, they may include persons from governmental natural resource management agencies; non-governmental organisations; funding bodies; universities; veterinary institutions; zoos (and private animal breeders) and/or botanic gardens, with a full range of suitable expertise. Team leaders should be responsible for coordination between the various bodies and provision should be made for publicity and public education about the project.

### 4. PRE-PROJECT ACTIVITIES 4a. BIOLOGICAL

### (i) Feasibility study and background research

- An assessment should be made of the taxonomic status of individuals to be re-introduced. They should preferably be of the same subspecies or race as those which were extirpated, unless adequate numbers are not available. An investigation of historical information about the loss and fate of individuals from the re-introduction area, as well as molecular genetic studies, should be undertaken in case of doubt as to individuals' taxonomic status. A study of genetic variation within and between populations of this and related taxa can also be helpful. Special care is needed when the population has long been extinct.
- Detailed studies should be made of the status and biology of wild populations(if they exist) to determine the species' critical needs. For animals, this would include descriptions of habitat preferences, intraspecific variation and adaptations to local ecological conditions, social behaviour, group composition, home range size, shelter and food requirements, foraging and feeding behaviour, predators and diseases. For migratory species, studies should include the potential migratory areas. For plants, it would include biotic and abiotic habitat requirements, dispersal mechanisms, reproductive biology, symbiotic relationships (e.g. with mycorrhizae, pollinators), insect pests and diseases. Overall, a firm knowledge of the natural history of the species in question is crucial to the entire re-introduction scheme.
- The species, if any, that has filled the void created by the loss of the species concerned, should be determined; an understanding of the effect the re-introduced species will have on the ecosystem is important for ascertaining the success of the re-introduced population.
- The build-up of the released population should be modelled under various sets of conditions, in order to specify the optimal number and composition of individuals to be released per year and the numbers of years necessary to promote establishment of a viable population.
- A Population and Habitat Viability Analysis will aid in identifying significant environmental and population variables and assessing their potential interactions, which would guide long-term population management.

### (ii) Previous Re-introductions

• Thorough research into previous re-introductions of the same or similar species and wideranging contacts with persons having relevant expertise should be conducted prior to and while developing re-introduction protocol.

### (iii) Choice of release site and type

- Site should be within the historic range of the species. For an initial re-inforcement there should be few remnant wild individuals. For a re-introduction, there should be no remnant population to prevent disease spread, social disruption and introduction of alien genes. In some circumstances, a re-introduction or re-inforcement may have to be made into an area which is fenced or otherwise delimited, but it should be within the species' former natural habitat and range.
- A conservation/ benign introduction should be undertaken only as a last resort when no opportunities for re-introduction into the original site or range exist and only when a significant contribution to the conservation of the species will result.

• The re-introduction area should have assured, long-term protection (whether formal or otherwise).

### (iv) Evaluation of re-introduction site

- Availability of suitable habitat: re-introductions should only take place where the habitat and landscape requirements of the species are satisfied, and likely to be sustained for the for-seeable future. The possibility of natural habitat change since extirpation must be considered. Likewise, a change in the legal/ political or cultural environment since species extirpation needs to be ascertained and evaluated as a possible constraint. The area should have sufficient carrying capacity to sustain growth of the re-introduced population and support a viable (self-sustaining) population in the long run.
- Identification and elimination, or reduction to a sufficient level, of previous causes of decline: could include disease; over-hunting; over-collection; pollution; poisoning; competition with or predation by introduced species; habitat loss; adverse effects of earlier research or management programmes; competition with domestic livestock, which may be seasonal. Where the release site has undergone substantial degradation caused by human activity, a habitat restoration programme should be initiated before the re-introduction is carried out.

### (v) Availability of suitable release stock

- It is desirable that source animals come from wild populations. If there is a choice of wild populations to supply founder stock for translocation, the source population should ideally be closely related genetically to the original native stock and show similar ecological characteristics (morphology, physiology, behaviour, habitat preference) to the original sub-population.
- Removal of individuals for re-introduction must not endanger the captive stock population or the wild source population. Stock must be guaranteed available on a regular and predictable basis, meeting specifications of the project protocol.
- Individuals should only be removed from a wild population after the effects of translocation on the donor population have been assessed, and after it is guaranteed that these effects will not be negative.
- If captive or artificially propagated stock is to be used, it must be from a population which has been soundly managed both demographically and genetically, according to the principles of contemporary conservation biology.
- Re-introductions should not be carried out merely because captive stocks exist, nor solely as a means of disposing of surplus stock.
- Prospective release stock, including stock that is a gift between governments, must be subjected to a thorough veterinary screening process before shipment from original source. Any animals found to be infected or which test positive for non-endemic or contagious pathogens with a potential impact on population levels, must be removed from the consignment, and the uninfected, negative remainder must be placed in strict quarantine for a suitable period before retest. If clear after retesting, the animals may be placed for shipment.
- Since infection with serious disease can be acquired during shipment, especially if this is intercontinental, great care must be taken to minimize this risk.
- Stock must meet all health regulations prescribed by the veterinary authorities of the recipient country and adequate provisions must be made for quarantine if necessary.

### (vi) Release of captive stock

- Most species of mammal and birds rely heavily on individual experience and learning as juveniles for their survival; they should be given the opportunity to acquire the necessary information to enable survival in the wild, through training in their captive environment; a captive bred individual's probability of survival should approximate that of a wild counterpart.
- Care should be taken to ensure that potentially dangerous captive bred animals (such as large carnivores or primates) are not so confident in the presence of humans that they might be a danger to local inhabitants and/or their livestock.

### 4b. SOCIO-ECONOMIC AND LEGAL REQUIREMENTS

- Re-introductions are generally long-term projects that require the commitment of long-term financial and political support.
- Socio-economic studies should be made to assess impacts, costs and benefits of the reintroduction programme to local human populations.
- A thorough assessment of attitudes of local people to the proposed project is necessary to ensure long term protection of the re-introduced population, especially if the cause of species' decline was due to human factors (e.g. over-hunting, over-collection, loss or alteration of habitat). The programme should be fully understood, accepted and supported by local communities.
- Where the security of the re-introduced population is at risk from human activities, measures should be taken to minimise these in the re-introduction area. If these measures are inadequate, the re-introduction should be abandoned or alternative release areas sought.
- The policy of the country to re-introductions and to the species concerned should be assessed. This might include checking existing provincial, national and international legislation and regulations, and provision of new measures and required permits as necessary.
- Re-introduction must take place with the full permission and involvement of all relevant government agencies of the recipient or host country. This is particularly important in re-introductions in border areas, or involving more than one state or when a re-introduced population can expand into other states, provinces or territories.
- If the species poses potential risk to life or property, these risks should be minimised and adequate provision made for compensation where necessary; where all other solutions fail, removal or destruction of the released individual should be considered. In the case of migratory/mobile species, provisions should be made for crossing of international/state boundaries.

### 5. PLANNING, PREPARATION AND RELEASE STAGES

- Approval of relevant government agencies and land owners, and coordination with national and international conservation organizations.
- Construction of a multidisciplinary team with access to expert technical advice for all phases of the programme.
- Identification of short- and long-term success indicators and prediction of programme duration, in context of agreed aims and objectives.
- Securing adequate funding for all programme phases.

- Design of pre- and post- release monitoring programme so that each re-introduction is a carefully designed experiment, with the capability to test methodology with scientifically collected data. Monitoring the health of individuals, as well as the survival, is important; intervention may be necessary if the situation proves unforseeably favourable.
- Appropriate health and genetic screening of release stock, including stock that is a gift between governments. Health screening of closely related species in the re-introduction area.
- If release stock is wild-caught, care must be taken to ensure that: a) the stock is free from infectious or contagious pathogens and parasites before shipment and b) the stock will not be exposed to vectors of disease agents which may be present at the release site (and absent at the source site) and to which it may have no acquired immunity.
- If vaccination prior to release, against local endemic or epidemic diseases of wild stock or domestic livestock at the release site, is deemed appropriate, this must be carried out during the "Preparation Stage" so as to allow sufficient time for the development of the required immunity.
- Appropriate veterinary or horticultural measures as required to ensure health of released stock throughout the programme. This is to include adequate quarantine arrangements, especially where founder stock travels far or crosses international boundaries to the release site.
- Development of transport plans for delivery of stock to the country and site of reintroduction, with special emphasis on ways to minimize stress on the individuals during transport.
- Determination of release strategy (acclimatization of release stock to release area; behavioural training including hunting and feeding; group composition, number, release patterns and techniques; timing).
- Establishment of policies on interventions (see below).
- Development of conservation education for long-term support; professional training of individuals involved in the long-term programme; public relations through the mass media and in local community; involvement where possible of local people in the programme.
- The welfare of animals for release is of paramount concern through all these stages.

### 6. POST-RELEASE ACTIVITIES

- Post release monitoring is required of all (or sample of) individuals. This most vital aspect may be by direct (e.g. tagging, telemetry) or indirect (e.g. spoor, informants) methods as suitable.
- Demographic, ecological and behavioural studies of released stock must be undertaken.
- Study of processes of long-term adaptation by individuals and the population.
- Collection and investigation of mortalities.
- Interventions (e.g. supplemental feeding; veterinary aid; horticultural aid) when necessary.
- Decisions for revision, rescheduling, or discontinuation of programme where necessary.
- Habitat protection or restoration to continue where necessary.
- Continuing public relations activities, including education and mass media coverage.
- Evaluation of cost-effectiveness and success of re- introduction techniques.
• Regular publications in scientific and popular literature.

### Footnotes:

1 Guidelines for determining procedures for disposal of species confiscated in trade are being developed separately by IUCN.

2 The taxonomic unit referred to throughout the document is species; it may be a lower taxonomic unit (e.g. subspecies or race) as long as it can be unambiguously defined. 3 A taxon is extinct when there is no reasonable doubt that the last individual has died

The IUCN/SSC Re-introduction Specialist Group (RSG) is a disciplinary group (as opposed to most SSC Specialist Groups which deal with single taxonomic groups), covering a wide range of plant and animal species. The RSG has an extensive international network, a re-introduction projects database and re-introduction library. The RSG publishes a bi-annual newsletter RE-INTRODUCTION NEWS.

If you are a re-introduction practitioner or interested in re-introductions please contact:

Mr. Pritpal S. Soorae Senior Conservation Officer IUCN/SSC Re-introduction Specialist Group (RSG) Environmental Research & Wildlife Development Agency (ERWDA) P.O. Box 45553 Abu Dhabi United Arab Emirates (UAE)

Tel: (D/L) 971-2-693-4650 or 681-7171 Fax: 971-2-681-7361 E-mail: PSoorae@erwda.gov.ae

© IUCN 1996

### **IUCN GUIDELINES FOR THE PLACEMENT OF CONFISCATED ANIMALS**

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY 254 Statement of Principle257 Statement of Need 257 Management Options 259 Option 1 -- Captivity 259 Captivity – Sale, Loan or Donation 260 Captivity – Benefits 261 Captivity - Concerns 261 Option 2 -- Return to the Wild 263 Return to the Wild - Benefits 264 Return to the Wild - Concerns 264 Option 3 -- Euthanasia 266 Euthanasia-- Benefits 267 Euthansia- Risks 267 Establishing the Necessary Frameworks 268 Decision Tree Analysis 268 DECISION TREE ANALYSIS - CAPTIVITY 269 DECISION TREE ANALYSIS -- RETURN TO THE WILD 271 Relevant Documents 274 Annexes 275 Annex 1- Decision Tree for Captive Options 275 Annex 2 - Decision Tree for Return to the Wild 276 Annex 3 - Key Contacts 277

## EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

Live wild animals are confiscated by local, regional, and national authorities for a variety of reasons. Once they have taken possession of these animals, these authorities must dispose of them responsibly, in a timely and efficient manner. Prevailing legislation, cultural practices, and economic conditions will influence decisions on appropriate disposition of confiscated animals. Within a conservation context, there are several possible options from which to choose:

- to maintain the animals in captivity for the remainder of their natural lives;
  2) to return the animals to the wild;
  3) to euthanize the animals, i.e., humanely destroy them
- The IUCN Guidelines for the Placement of Confiscated Animals discuss the benefits and risks involved in each of these options. These Guidelines should be read in conjunction with the IUCN Guidelines for Re-introductions (IUCN 1998), annexed hereto. They should also be read with reference to the CITES Guidelines for the Disposal of Confiscated Live Species of Species Included in the Appendices (Resolution Conf. 10.7) and the IUCN Guidelines for the Prevention of Biodiversity Loss due to Biological Invasion.

**Returning confiscated animals to the wild** is often considered the most popular option for a confiscating agency and can garner strong public support. However, such action poses real risks and problems and generally confers few benefits. These risks and problems include, but are not limited to, the following.

- The mortality of animals released from captivity is usually high. Confiscated mammals and birds captured as juveniles have not learned the skills they need to survive in the wild. Other animals may be weakened or otherwise affected by their time in captivity and, thus, less able to survive. Finally, there is little chance of survival if the animals are released at a site that is not appropriate for the ecology or behavior of the species.
- 2. Animals released into the wild outside of their natural range if they survive at all have the potential to become pests or invasive. The effects of invasive alien species are a major cause of biodiversity loss, as such species compete with native species and in other ways compromise the ecological integrity of the habitats in which they have become established.
- 3. Having been in trade or a holding facility often in association with other wild animals and, in some instances, domesticated ones, confiscated wild animals are likely to have been exposed to diseases and parasites. If returned to the wild, these animals may infect other wild animals, thus causing serious, and potentially irreversible, problems.
- 4. In many instances, confiscated wild animals have been moved great distances from the site of capture and changed hands several times, such that their actual provenance is unknown. It may, therefore, be impossible or very difficult to establish an appropriate site for return to the wild that takes into account the ecological needs of the species, the animals' genetic make-up, and other attributes that are important to minimize risks (e.g., competition, hybridization) to wild populations at a release site.
- 5. in cases where the provenance is known, the ecological niche vacated by that animal may already be filled by other individuals and replacing the animal could result in further undesired disturbance of the ecosystem

6. Responsible programs to return animals to the wild (c.f. IUCN 1998) are long-term endeavors that require substantial human and financial resources; hence, they can divert scarce resources away from other more effective conservation activities.

If returning confiscated animals to the wild is to be consistent with conservation principles and practice, it should a) *only* be into a site outside of the species' natural range if such an action is in accordance with the IUCN Guidelines for Re-introductions for a conservation introduction; and b) only be practiced in cases where the animals are of high conservation value and/or the release is part of a management programme. Any release to the wild must include the necessary screening and monitoring to address potential negative impacts, as set forth in the IUCN Guidelines for Re-introductions (IUCN 1998).

**Retaining confiscated wild animals in captivity** is a clear – and, in most cases, preferable - alternative to returning them to the wild. Clearly, returning animals to their owners will be required in cases of theft. There are a number of options for keeping animals in captivity; however, each of these also has costs and risks.

- As confiscated animals are likely to have been exposed to diseases and parasites, if held in captivity, they may infect other captive animals, causing serious, and potentially irreversible, problems.
- Finding an appropriate home for confiscated animals can be time-consuming, and caring for the animals during that time can be expensive.
- Wild animals have specific nutritional requirements and require specific care. Short-term and long-term humane care of confiscated wild animals requires space, finances and expertise not readily available in many countries.
- Transfer of ownership from a confiscating government authority to a private entity individual or non-commercial or commercial care facility – can raise complicated legal and ethical issues, which are difficult – and time-consuming - to address. Sale or transfer of ownership may – or may be seen to - stimulate demand for these animals and exacerbate any threat that trade may pose to the species. It may also give the appearance that the government condones illegal or irregular trade or, in the case of actual sale, is benefiting from such trade.

In addition to avoiding risks to wild populations engendered by return to the wild, keeping confiscated animals in captivity provides other benefits, for example:

- Confiscated animals can be used to educate people about wildlife and conservation, as well as the consequences of trade in live wildlife.
- Confiscated animals placed in captivity can provide breeding stock for zoos, aquariums, and other facilities, thus potentially reducing the demand for wild-caught animals although the opposite effect may also occur.
- In specific instances where the provenance of the confiscated specimens is known, these animals can provide the nucleus, and breeding stock, for possible reintroduction programs.
- Confiscated animals can be the subject of a range of non-invasive research, training and teaching programs with important potential benefits for conservation.

**Euthanasia** must be considered a valid alternative to placing animals in captivity or returning them to the wild. Although it may appear counter-intuitive to employ euthanasia, it is by

definition a humane act and can be wholly consistent with both conservation and animal welfare considerations. Further, although many confiscating authorities may be wary of criticism elicited by a decision to euthanize confiscated animals, there are a number of reasons to justify its use, including the following:

- In many, if not most, circumstances, euthanasia offers the most humane alternative for dealing with confiscated wild animals.
- Euthanasia eliminates the genetic, ecological, and other risks that release to the wild may pose to wild populations and ecosystems.
- Euthanasia eliminates the serious risk of spreading disease to wild or captive populations of animals.
- Euthanasia will often be the least costly option.

Establishment of an overall policy framework, with specific procedures for confiscating authorities, will facilitate consideration of the above three options for disposition, including the logistical, legal, and ethical questions that these authorities must address.

### **IUCN Guidelines for the Placement of Confiscated Animals**

## Statement of Principle

When live wild animals<sup>3</sup> are confiscated by government authorities, these authorities have a responsibility to dispose of them appropriately. Within a conservation context, and the confines of national and international law, the ultimate decision on placement of confiscated animals must achieve three goals: 1) to maximise the conservation value of the animals without in any way endangering the health, behavioural repertoire, genetic characteristics, or conservation status of wild or captive populations of the species<sup>4</sup> or any other wild living organism; 2) to discourage further illegal or irregular<sup>5</sup> trade in the species; and 3) to provide a humane solution, whether this involves maintaining the animals in captivity, returning them to the wild, or employing euthanasia to destroy them.

## Statement of Need

Increased regulation of trade in wildlife and enforcement of these laws and regulations have resulted in an increase in the number of live wild animals that are confiscated by government agencies as a result of non-compliance with these regulations. In some instances, the confiscation is a result of patently illegal trade; in others, it is in response to other irregularities. While in some cases the number of confiscated animals is small, in many others the number is in the hundreds or greater. The large numbers involved, and the need to care for and dispose of them responsibly, have placed serious pressures on confiscating authorities, many of whom lack the technical, financial or human resources or the necessary frameworks to address these situations adequately.

In many countries, the practice has generally been to donate confiscated<sup>6</sup> animals to zoos or aquaria. However, this option is proving less viable. Zoos and aquaria generally cannot accommodate large numbers of animals that become available through confiscations. In addition to the resources required to house them and administer veterinary and other care, these institutions are usually less interested in the common species that comprise the vast proportion of wildlife confiscations. The international zoo community has recognized that placing animals of low conservation priority in limited cage space may benefit those individuals but may also detract from conservation efforts as a whole. Therefore, they are setting priorities for cage space (IUDZG/CBSG 1993), thus reducing their availability to receive confiscated animals.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup>In these Guidelines, unless stated otherwise, confiscated animals should be understood to refer to live wild animals, not those that have been captive-bred.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>4</sup>Although this document refers to species, in the case of species with well-defined subspecies , the issues addressed will apply to lower taxonomic units.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>5</sup>Irregular trade in a species refers to, for example, insufficient or incomplete paperwork from the exporting country or poor packing that has comprised the welfare of the live animals in the shipment.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>6</sup>Although not discussed here, it should be understood that, depending on the statutory authority of the agencies involved, animals may first be seized and then confiscated only on completion of legal proceedings resulting in forfeiture by the individual having previously claimed ownership of the animals.

There has been an increasing tendency to address the problem of disposition of confiscated animals by releasing them back into the wild. In some cases, release of confiscated animals into existing wild populations has been made after careful evaluation and with due regard for existing general guidelines (IUCN 1987, IUCN 1998). In other cases, such releases have not been well planned and have been inconsistent with general conservation objectives and humane considerations. Animals released in inappropriate habitat are usually doomed to starvation or death from other causes that the animals are not equipped or adapted against. In addition to humane concerns, release into wild populations may also have strong negative conservation value by threatening existing wild populations for the following reasons.

- 1) Animals released into the wild outside their natural range can become pests or invasive, thus threatening agriculture and other sectors, native species, and the ecological integrity of the area in which they become established. The effects of invasive alien species are a major cause of global biodiversity loss.
- 2) The former home range of a confiscated animal may be quickly occupied by other individuals and releasing the confiscated animal could lead to further disruption of the animal's social ecology.
- 3) Diseases and parasites acquired by confiscated animals while held in captivity can easily spread into existing wild populations if these animals are released.
- 4) Individuals released into existing populations, or in areas near to existing populations, that are not of the same race or sub-species as those in the wild population, results in mixing of distinct genetic lineages.
- 5) Animals held in captivity, particularly immature animals, can acquire an inappropriate behavioural repertoire from individuals of other species, and/or lose certain behaviours or not develop the full behavioural repertoire necessary for survival in the wild. It is also possible that release of animals could result in inter-specific hybridisation, a problem also to be avoided.

In light of these trends, there is an increasing demand -- and urgent need -- for information and advice on considerations relating to responsible placement of confiscated animals. There is also a pressing need for technical expertise and assistance in assessing the veterinary, husbandry and other questions that must be addressed in this process. Recognizing this problem, the Parties to the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species of Wild Fauna and Flora (CITES) have adopted guidelines for Disposal of Confiscated Live Specimens of Species Included in the Appendices (Resolution Conf. 10.7), applicable to both plants and animals. These IUCN guidelines build on and supplement those drawn up by CITES to apply more broadly to confiscated animals and confiscation situations.

Disposition of confiscated animals is not a simple or straightforward process. Only on rare occasions will the optimum course be obvious or result in an action of conservation value. Options for disposition of confiscated animals have thus far been influenced by the public's perception that returning animals to the wild is the optimal solution in terms of both animal welfare and conservation. However, a growing body of scientific study of re-introduction of captive animals, the nature and dynamics of wildlife diseases, and the nature and extent of the problems associated with invasive species suggests that such actions may be among the least appropriate options for many reasons, including those enumerated above. This recognition requires that the options available to confiscating authorities for disposition be carefully reviewed.

## **Management Options**

In deciding on the disposition of confiscated animals, there is a need to ensure both the humane treatment of the animals and the conservation and welfare of existing wild populations. Options for disposition fall into three principal categories: 1) maintenance of the individual(s) in captivity; 2) returning the individual(s) in question to the wild; and 3) euthanasia.

Within a conservation perspective, by far the most important consideration in reviewing the options for disposition of confiscated animals is the conservation status of the species concerned. Where the animals represent an endangered or threatened species or are otherwise of high conservation value<sup>7</sup>, particular effort should be directed towards evaluating whether and how these animals might contribute to a conservation programme for the species. The expense and difficulty of returning animals to the wild as part of a conservation (c.f. IUCN 1998, presented in Annex 4) or management programme or pursuing certain captive options will generally only be justified for species of high conservation value. How to allocate resources to the large numbers of confiscated animals representing common species is one of the fundamental policy questions that confiscating authorities must address.

The decision as to which option to employ in the disposition of confiscated animals will depend on various legal, social, economic and biological factors. The "Decision Tree" provided in the present guidelines is intended to facilitate consideration of these options. The tree has been designed so that it may be used for both threatened and common species. However, it recognizes that that conservation value of the species will be the primary consideration affecting the options available for placement. International networks of experts, such as the IUCN Species Survival Commission Specialist Groups (see Annex 3 for contact details), should be able to assist confiscating authorities in their deliberations as to the appropriate disposition of confiscated animals.

In some instances, in the case of international trade, there may be a demand for confiscated animals to be returned to their country of origin, and the government authorities of that country may request their return. CITES has established guidelines on this question through Resolution Conf. 10.7. It should be noted that it is often difficult to establish the true origin (including country of origin) of many animals in trade. Moreover, final disposition of confiscated animals upon their return to the country of origin will require consideration of the same options presented here. There is a need for cooperative efforts to review these options in order to ensure that repatriation is not undertaken simply to shift the burden of addressing the problem to the country of origin.

## **Option 1 -- Captivity**

Confiscated animals are already in captivity; there are numerous options for maintaining them there. Depending on the circumstances and the prevailing legal or policy prescriptions, animals. can be donated, loaned, or sold, to public or private facilities, commercial or non-commercial, and to private individuals. Placement can be in the country of origin (or export), country of confiscation, or a country with adequate and/or specialized facilities for the species or animals in question. If animals are maintained in captivity, in preference to being returned to the wild or

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>7</sup> It is recognized that "conservation value" may not always be easy to assess and may be a function of species' status at national or regional level as much as international level (e.g., listed as threatened by IUCN).

euthanized, they must be afforded humane conditions and ensured proper care for their natural lives.

Zoos and aquaria are the captive facilities most commonly considered for placement of animals, but these institutions are generally less willing and available to receive such animals than is assumed. As most confiscated animals are common species, the full range of captive options should be considered. These include zoos and aquaria as well as the following:

- **Rescue centers**, established specifically to treat injured or confiscated animals;
- Life-time care facilities devoted to the care of confiscated animals;
- **Specialist societies** or clubs devoted to the study and care of single species or species groups (e.g., reptiles, amphibians, birds) have provided an avenue for the disposition of confiscated animals through placement with these societies or individual members.
- Humane societies established to care and seek owners for abandoned animals may be in a position to assist with placement of confiscated animals with private individuals who can provide life-time care.
- Commercial captive breeders may be willing to receive and care for animals as well as to incorporate them into captive breeding activities. Such facilities, although commercial in nature, are likely to have the technical expertise and other resources to care for the animals. In addition, production of animals from captive breeding operations may reduce the demand for wild-caught animals.
- **Research institutions** maintain collections of exotic animals for many kinds of research (e.g. behavioural, ecological, physiological, psychological, medical and veterinary). Some research programmes have direct relevance to conservation. Attitudes towards vivisection or, in some instances, the non-invasive use of animals in research programmes as captive study populations vary widely from country to country and even within countries. These attitudes are likely to affect consideration of such programmes as an option for confiscated animals. However, it should be noted that transfer to facilities involved in research conducted under humane conditions may offer an alternative and one that may eventually contribute information relevant to the species' conservation.

Choosing amongst these options will depend on the conservation value of the animals involved, the condition of the animals, the circumstances of trade in the species, and other factors. As a general rule, where confiscated animals are of high conservation value, an effort should be made to place them in a captive facility that ensures their availability for conservation efforts over the long term, such as with a zoo, ex-situ research programme, or an established captive breeding program or facility.

### **Captivity – Sale, Loan or Donation**

Animals can be placed with an institution or individual in a number of ways. It is critical to consider two issues: the ownership of the animals and/or their progeny, and the payment of any fees as part of transfer of ownership. Confiscating authorities and individuals or organizations involved in the placement of confiscated specimens must clarify ownership, both of the specimens being transferred and any progeny. They must also consider the possible implications of payment of fees in terms of public perception and for achieving the

purpose of confiscation, which is to penalize and, in so doing, deter illegal and irregular trade. The following points should considered.

Transfer of ownership/custody. Unless specific legal provisions apply, the confiscating authority should consider including in an agreement to transfer ownership or custody the conditions under which the transfer is made, such as any restrictions on use (e.g., exhibition, education, captive breeding, commercial or non-commercial) or obligations concerning use (breeding efforts), that the animals may be put to. Such an agreement may set forth conditions relating to:

- subsequent transfer of ownership or custody;
- changes in the use of the animals by the new owner or custodian; and
- consequences of violation of the terms of transfer by the new owner or custodian.

Payment of fees. There may be cases where captive facilities are willing to receive and commit to care for confiscated animals providing payment is made by the confiscating authority against those costs. More frequently, the confiscating authority may seek to recoup the costs of caring for the animals prior to placement by levying a fee as part of transfer of ownership. Such payment of fees is problematic for many reasons, including the following:

- it may weaken the impact of the confiscation as a deterrent;
- it may risk creating a public perception that the confiscating authority is perpetuating or benefiting from illegal or irregular trade; or
- depending on the level of the fees proposed, it may work against finding a suitable option for maintaining the animals in captivity.

It is important that confiscating authorities be prepared to make public the conditions under which ownership of confiscated animals has been transferred and, where applicable, the basis for any payments involved.

### **Captivity – Benefits**

In addition to avoiding the risks associated with attempting to return them to the wild, there are numerous benefits of placing confiscated animals in a facility that will provide life-time care under humane conditions. These include:

- a) educational value in terms of possible exhibition or other use;
- b) the satisfaction to be derived from the increased chances for survival of the animals;
- c) the potential for the animals to be used in a captive breeding programme to replace wildcaught animals as a source for trade;
- d) the potential for captive breeding for possible re-introduction or other conservation programmes; and
- e) the potential for use in conservation and other valuable research programs.

### **Captivity - Concerns**

The concerns raised by placing animals in captivity include:

A) DISEASE. Confiscated animals may serve as vectors for disease, which can affect con-specifics and other species held in captivity. As many diseases cannot be screened for, even the strictest

quarantine and most extensive screening for disease cannot ensure that an animal is disease-free. Where quarantine cannot adequately ensure that an individual is disease-free, isolation for an indefinite period, or euthanasia, must be carried out.

B) CAPTIVE ANIMALS MAINTAINED OUTSIDE THEIR RANGE CAN ESCAPE from captivity and become pests or invasive. Unintentionally introduced exotic species have become invasive in many countries, causing tremendous damage to agriculture, fisheries, and transport, but also to native animal populations. The decline of the European mink (*Mustela lutreola*), listed as Endangered by IUCN, is in part a result of competition from American mink (*Mustela vison*) escaped from fur farms, while the negative effects of competition from introduced North American red-eared slider turtles (*Trachemys scripta elegans*), originally imported as pets, have been raised in relation to European and Asian freshwater turtles.

C) COST OF PLACEMENT. Providing housing and veterinary and other care to confiscated animals can be expensive; as a result, it may be difficult to identify institutions or individuals willing to assume these costs.

D) POTENTIAL TO ENCOURAGE UNDESIRED TRADE. As is discussed above, transfer of ownership of confiscated animals to individuals or institutions, whether it involves loan, donation, or sale, is problematic. Some have argued that any transfer of ownership - whether commercial or non-commercial - of confiscated animals risks promoting a market for these species and creating a perception of the confiscating authority's being involved in illegal or irregular trade. These risks must be weighed in relation to the benefits, in particular that maintenance in captivity offers over return to the wild or euthanasia. Some factors that might be considered in assessing the degree to which transfer of ownership – and sale - might promoted undesired trade are:

# 1) whether the animals in question are already available for sale legally in the confiscating country in commercial quantities; and

2) whether wildlife traders under indictment for, or convicted of, crimes related to illegal or irregular trade in wildlife can be prevented from purchasing the animals in guestion.

the monetary/ commercial value of the animals in question

### As regards the latter question, it should be noted that experience in selling confiscated animals suggests that it is virtually impossible to ensure that commercial dealers suspected or implicated in illegal or irregular trade are excluded, directly or indirectly, in purchasing confiscated animals.

In certain circumstances, transfer to commercial captive breeders may have a clearer potential for the conservation of the species, or welfare of the individuals, than non-commercial disposition or euthanasia. In the case of common species, commercial breeders may be a particularly attractive option; in the case of species of high conservation value, this option should be carefully assessed. There may be a risk of stimulating demand from wild populations through increased availability of the species, and it may be difficult to secure access to these animals for future conservation activities.

### **Option 2 -- Return to the Wild**

Because of the serious risks posed to wild animal populations from released confiscated animals, return to the wild is considered here to be a desirable option in only a very small number of instances and under very specific circumstances. The IUCN Guidelines for Re-introductions (IUCN 1998, reproduced in Annex 4) make a clear distinction between the different options for returning animals to the wild to meet conservation objectives and discuss the purposes, rationale and procedures relating to these options.

The present Guidelines do not consider a viable option the return of animals to the wild except in accordance with the IUCN Guidelines for Re-introductions. Poorly planned or executed release or (re-)introduction programmes are no better than dumping animals in the wild and should be vigorously opposed on both conservation and humane grounds.

A) **Re-introduction**: an attempt to establish a population in an area that was once part of the range of the species but from which it has become extirpated.

Some of the best known re-introductions have been of species that had become extinct in the wild. Examples include: Père David's deer (*Elaphurus davidanus*) and the Arabian oryx (*Oryx leucoryx*). Other re-introduction programmes have involved species that persist in some parts of their historical range but have been eliminated from others; the aim of these programmes is to re-establish a population in an area, or region, from which the species has disappeared. An example of this type of re-introduction is the recent re-introduction of the swift fox (*Vulpes velox*) in Canada.

B) **Reinforcement of an Existing Population** (also referred to as Supplementation): the addition of individuals to an existing population of the same species.

Reinforcement can be a powerful conservation tool when natural populations are diminished by a process which, at least in theory, can be reversed. One of the few examples of a successful reinforcement project involves the golden lion tamarin (*Leontopithecus rosalia*) in Brazil. Habitat loss, coupled with capture of live animals for pets, resulted in a rapid decline of the golden lion tamarin. When reserves were expanded, and capture for trade curbed, captive-bred golden lion tamarins were then used to supplement depleted wild populations.

REINFORCEMENT HAS BEEN MOST WIDELY PURSUED IN THE CONTEXT OF REHABILITATION PROGRAMMES, I.E., WHEN INDIVIDUAL INJURED ANIMALS HAVE BEEN PROVIDED WITH VETERINARY CARE AND RELEASED. SUCH ACTIVITIES ARE COMMON IN MANY COUNTRIES, AND SPECIFIC PROGRAMMES EXIST FOR SPECIES AS DIVERSE AS HEDGEHOGS AND BIRDS OF PREY. HOWEVER COMMON AN ACTIVITY, REINFORCEMENT CARRIES WITH IT THE VERY GRAVE RISK THAT INDIVIDUALS HELD IN CAPTIVITY, EVEN TEMPORARILY, ARE POTENTIAL VECTORS FOR THE INTRODUCTION OF DISEASE OR INFECTIOUS ORGANISMS INTO WILD POPULATIONS.

BECAUSE OF DISEASE AND OTHER RISKS TO WILD POPULATIONS, AS WELL AS THE COSTS OF SCREENING AND POST-RELEASE MONITORING, REINFORCEMENT SHOULD ONLY BE EMPLOYED IN INSTANCES WHERE THERE IS A DIRECT AND MEASURABLE CONSERVATION BENEFIT (DEMOGRAPHICALLY AND/OR GENETICALLY, AND/OR TO ENHANCE CONSERVATION IN THE PUBLIC'S EYE), OR, AT LEAST, WHERE THE PRESUMED BENEFITS CLEARLY OUTWEIGH THESE RISKS.

C) **Conservation Introductions** (also referred to as Beneficial or Benign Introductions): an attempt to establish a species, for the purpose of conservation, outside its recorded distribution but within an appropriate habitat and eco-geographical area. This is a feasible conservation tool only when there is no remaining area left within a species' historic range.

Extensive use of conservation introductions has been made in New Zealand, where endangered birds have been transferred to off-shore islands that were adjacent to, but not part of, the animals' original range. Conservation introductions can also be a component of a larger programme of re-introduction, an example being the breeding of red wolves (*Canis rufus*) on islands outside their natural range and subsequent transfer to mainland range areas.

### **Return to the Wild - Benefits**

There are benefits of returning confiscated animals to the wild, providing the pre-requisite veterinary, genetic, and other screening is undertaken and post-release monitoring programmes are established (as per IUCN 1998).

- a) In situations where the existing population is severely threatened, re-introduction might improve the long-term conservation potential of the species as a whole, or of a local population of the species (e.g., golden lion tamarins).
- b) Return to the wild makes a strong political/educational statement concerning the fate of animals and may serve to promote local conservation values. However, as part of any education or public awareness programmes, the costs and difficulties associated with the return to the wild must be emphasized.
- c) Species returned to the wild have the possibility of continuing to fulfill their biological and ecological roles.

### **Return to the Wild - Concerns**

As indicated above, because of the risk of biological invasion, these guidelines do not consider it a viable option to return animals to the wild outside of their natural range in any but the most exceptional circumstances. Before return to the wild (as per IUCN 1998) of confiscated animals is considered, several issues of concern must be considered in general terms: welfare, conservation value, cost, and disease.

A) WELFARE. While some consider return to the wild to be humane, ill-conceived projects may return animals to the wild which then die from starvation or do not adapt to an unfamiliar or inappropriate environment. Humane considerations require that each effort to return confiscated animals to the wild be thoroughly researched and carefully planned. Re-introduction projects also require long-term commitment in terms of monitoring the fate of released individuals.

IN ORDER FOR RETURN TO THE WILD TO BE SERIOUSLY CONSIDERED ON WELFARE GROUNDS, SOME HAVE ADVOCATED THAT THE SURVIVAL PROSPECTS FOR RELEASED ANIMALS MUST AT LEAST APPROXIMATE THOSE OF WILD ANIMALS OF THE SAME SEX AND AGE. WHILE SUCH DEMOGRAPHIC DATA ON WILD POPULATIONS ARE RARELY AVAILABLE, THE SPIRIT OF THIS SUGGESTION SHOULD BE RESPECTED -- THERE MUST BE HUMANE TREATMENT OF CONFISCATED ANIMALS WHEN ATTEMPTING TO RETURN THEM TO THE WILD, AND THERE SHOULD BE A REASONABLE ASSESSMENT OF THE SURVIVAL PROSPECTS OF THE ANIMALS TO JUSTIFY THE RISKS INVOLVED.

B) CONSERVATION VALUE AND COST. In cases where returning confiscated animals to the wild appears to be the most humane option, such action can only be undertaken if it does not threaten existing populations of con-specifics or populations of other interacting species, or the ecological integrity of the area in which they live. The conservation of the species as a whole, and of other animals already living free, must take precedent over the welfare of individual animals that are already in captivity.

Before animals are used in programmes in which existing populations are reinforced, or new populations are established, it must be determined that returning these individuals to the wild will make a significant contribution to the conservation of the species, or populations of other interacting species, or it must serve a purpose directly related to the conservation and management of the species or ecosystem involved. Based solely on demographic considerations, large populations are less likely to go extinct, and, therefore, reinforcing existing very small wild populations may reduce the probability of extinction. In very small populations, a lack of males or females may result in reduced population growth or population decline and, therefore, reinforcing a very small population. However, genetic and behavioural considerations, as well as the possibility of disease introduction, also play a fundamental role in determining the long-term survival of a population. The potential conservation benefit of the re-introduction should clearly outweigh the risks.

The cost of returning animals to the wild in a responsible manner can be prohibitive, suggesting that this option should only be pursued when species are of high conservation value. Exceptions to this rule may be instances where the confiscated animals are not of high conservation value, but the circumstances and technical and other resources are available to ensure re-introduction is undertaken in accordance with conservation guidelines (e.g., IUCN 1998)

C) DISEASE. Animals held in captivity and/or transported, even for a very short time, may be exposed to a variety of pathogens. Release of these animals to the wild may result in introduction of disease to con-specifics or unrelated species with potentially catastrophic effects. Even if there is a very small risk that confiscated animals have been infected by exotic pathogens, the potential effects of introduced diseases on wild populations are often so great that this should preclude returning confiscated animals to the wild.

Release into the wild of any animal that has been held in captivity is risky. Animals held in captivity are more likely to acquire diseases and parasites. While some of these diseases can be tested for, tests do not exist for many animal diseases. Furthermore, animals held in captivity are frequently exposed to diseases not usually encountered in their natural habitat. Veterinarians and quarantine officers, thinking that the species in question is only susceptible to certain diseases, might not test

for the diseases picked up in captivity. It should be assumed that all diseases are potentially contagious.

IN ASSESSING THE POSSIBILITIES FOR DISEASE, IT MAY BE PARTICULARLY HELPFUL TO CONSIDER THE KNOWN OR PRESUMED CIRCUMSTANCES OF TRADE, INCLUDING:

- a) the time and distance from point of capture; the number of stages of trade and types of transport;
- b) whether the animals have been held or transported in proximity to wild or domesticated animals of the same or other species and what specific diseases have been known to be carried by such animals.

D) SOURCE OF INDIVIDUALS. If the precise provenance of the confiscated animals is not known (they may be from several different sites of origin), or if there is any question of the source of animals, supplementation may lead to inadvertent pollution of distinct genetic races or subspecies. If particular local races or sub-species show specific adaptation to their local environments, mixing in individuals from other races or sub-species may be damaging to the local population. Where the origin and habitat and ecological requirements of the species are unknown, introducing an individuals into the wrong habitat type may also doom them to death.

Given that any release incurs some risk, the following "precautionary principle" should be adopted: if there is no conservation value in releasing confiscated animals to the wild or no management programme exists within which such release can be undertaken according to conservation guidelines, the possibility of accidentally introducing a disease, or behavioural and genetic aberrations that are not already present into the environment, however unlikely, should rule out returning confiscated specimens to the wild as a placement option.

### **Option 3 -- Euthanasia**

Euthanasia -- the killing of animals carried out according to humane guidelines -- is a valid alternative to maintaining animals in captivity or returning them to the wild. Although it may appear counter-intuitive to employ euthanasia, it is, by definition, humane, and, thus can be wholly consistent with conservation and animal considerations. In many cases, it may be the most feasible option for conservation and humane, as well as economic, reasons. It is recognized that euthanasia is unlikely to be a popular option amongst confiscating authorities for disposition of confiscated animals. However, it cannot be overstressed that it may be the most responsible option. In many cases, authorities confiscating live animals will encounter the following situations:

- a) In the course of trade or while held in captivity, the animals have contracted a chronic disease that is incurable and poses a risk to other animals, whether held in captivity or in the wild.
- b) The actual provenance of the animals is unknown, and there is evidence to suggest that there may be genetic or other differences between them and presumed con-specifics in the wild, which could compromise the integrity of wild and captive populations, including those involved in breeding or conservation research activities.

- c) There are insufficient resources to return the animals to the wild in accordance with biological (e.g., IUCN 1998) and animal welfare (e.g., International Academy of Welfare Sciences 1992) guidelines.
- d) There are no feasible options for maintaining the animals in captivity.

In these instances, euthanasia may be the only responsible option and, thus, should be employed.

### **Euthanasia-- Benefits**

- a) With respect to the conservation of the species in question and of captive and wild populations of animals, euthanasia carries far fewer risks (e.g. disease, genetic pollution, biological invasion) than maintenance in captivity or return to the wild.
- b) Euthanasia may be the best (and only) possible solution to an acute problem with confiscated animals. Many possibilities for maintenance in captivity may not guarantee the animals' welfare over the long term, and the survival prospects of animals returned to the wild are generally not high, as, depending on the circumstances, such animals often die of starvation, disease or predation.
- c) Euthanasia acts to discourage the activities that gave rise to confiscation, as the animals in question are completely lost to the trade, with no chance of recovery by the traders involved. This removes any potential monetary gain from illegal trade. In addition, euthanasia may serve as a broader deterrent, in educating the public and other sectors about the serious and complex problems that can arise from trade in live wild animals.
- d) The choice of euthanasia over maintenance in captivity or return to the wild offers an opportunity for confiscating authorities and other agencies to educate the public about more esoteric conservation problems, including those relating to invasive species and the potential negative consequences of releasing animals to the wild without adequate safeguards. Increased public awareness may generate additional ideas on placement of confiscated animals.
- e) Euthanasia can be inexpensive as compared to other options. As such, it does not divert human and financial resources that could be allocated to other conservation or related activities, such as re-introduction or lifetime care of other animals, or the conservation of threatened species in the wild.

When animals are euthanized, or die in captivity, an effort should be made to make the best use of the dead specimens for scientific purposes, such as placing them in a reference collection in a university or research institute, which are very important for the study of biodiversity, or making them available for pathology or other research.

### Euthansia- Risks

A) Just as there is potential positive educational value in employing euthanasia, there is a problem that it may give rise to negative perceptions of the confiscating authority for having

taken that decision over other options. In such instances, there is a need to foresee such criticism and offer the rationale for the decision to euthanize.

B) There is a risk of losing unique behavioural, genetic and ecological material within an individual or group of individuals that represents variation within a species and may be of value for the conservation of the species.

## Establishing the Necessary Frameworks

In order for prospective confiscating agencies to address the logistical, legal and other difficulties resulting from the seizure of wild animals, their eventual confiscation, and responsible disposition based on the above three options, there should be established an overall policy framework and specific procedures that *inter alia*:

- Identify the authority or authorities with responsibility for confiscation and placement of wild animals;
- Identify or provide the basis for establishing the facilities that will receive and, as necessary, quarantine, seized animals and hold them until final disposition is decided;
- Identify government or non-government agencies and experts that can assist in the identification, care, and screening of the seized or confiscated animals and assist in the process of deciding on appropriate disposition;
- Identify institutions, agencies, and private individuals and societies who can provide assistance to confiscating authorities in disposing of confiscated animals (including humane euthanasia) or can receive such animals;
- Elaborate on and provide for the implementation of the above guidelines in terms of specific legal and regulatory provisions and administrative procedures concerning transfer of ownership (including sale) of confiscated animals, short-term (e.g., upon seizure) and long-term (e.g., post-confiscation) care, levying of fees and other payments for care of confiscated animals, and other considerations that may be required to ensure that confiscated wild animals are disposed of responsibly in terms of both their welfare and the conservation.
- Produce and implement written policies on disposal of confiscated wildlife, taking steps to ensure that all enforcement personnel are provided the necessary resources to implement the policy.

## **Decision Tree Analysis**

For decision trees dealing with "Return to the Wild" and "Captive Options," the confiscating party must first ask the question:

# Question 1: Will "Return to the Wild" make a significant contribution to the conservation of the species? Is there a management programme that has sufficient resources to enable return according to IUCN Re-introduction Guidelines?

The most important consideration in deciding on placement of confiscated specimens is the conservation value of the specimen in question. Conservation interests are best served by ensuring the survival of as many individuals as possible; hence, the re-introduction of confiscated

animals must improve the prospects for survival of the wild population. Re-introducing animals that have been held in captivity will always involve some level of risk to populations of the same or other species in the ecosystem, because there can never be absolute certainty that a confiscated animal is disease- and parasite-free. If the specimen is not of conservation value, the costs of re-introducing the animals to the wild may divert resources away from conservation programmes for other species or more effective conservation activities. In most instances, the benefits of return to the wild will be outweighed by the costs and risks of such an action. If returning animals to the wild is not of conservation value, captive options pose fewer risks and may offer more humane alternatives.

Q1 Answer: Yes: Investigate "Return to the Wild" Options. NO: Investigate "Captive Options".

## **DECISION TREE ANALYSIS - CAPTIVITY**

The decision to maintain confiscated animals in captivity involves a simpler set of considerations than that involving attempts to return confiscated animals to the wild.

Question 2: Have animals been subjected to comprehensive veterinary screening and quarantine?

Animals that may be transferred to captive facilities must have a clean bill of health because of the risk of introducing disease to captive populations. This should be established through quarantine and screening.

**Q2 Answer:** Yes: Proceed to Question 3.

No: Quarantine and screen, and proceed to Question 3

# Question 3: Have animals been found to be disease-free by comprehensive veterinary screening and quarantine, or can they be treated for any infection discovered?

If, during quarantine, the animals are found to harbour diseases that cannot reasonably be cured, they must be euthanized to prevent infection of other animals. If the animals are suspected to have come into contact with diseases for which screening is impossible, extended quarantine, transfer to a research facility, or euthanasia must be considered.

Q3 Answer: Yes: Proceed to Question 4

No: If chronic and incurable infection exists, first offer animals to research institutions. If impossible to place in such institutions, euthanize.

Question 4: Are there grounds for concern that certain options for transfer will stimulate further illegal or irregular trade or reduce the effectiveness of confiscation as a deterrent to such trade?

As much as possible, the confiscating authority should be satisfied that:

- 1) those involved in the illegal or irregular transaction that gave rise to confiscation cannot obtain the animals proposed for transfer;
- 2) the transfer does not compromise the objective of confiscation; and
- 3) the transfer will not increase illegal, irregular or otherwise undesired trade in the species.

What options can guarantee this will depend on the conservation status of the species in question, the nature of the trade in that species, and the circumstances of the specific incident that gave rise to confiscation. The payment of fees – to or by the confiscating authority – will complicate this assessment. Confiscating authorities must consider the various options for transfer in light of these concerns and weigh them against potential benefits that certain options might offer.

- Answer: Yes: Proceed to Question 5a.
  - No: Proceed to Question 5b.

# Question 5a: Is space available with a captive facility where the benefits of placement will outweigh concerns about the risks associated with transfer?

# Question 5b: Is space available in a captive facility that offers particular benefits for the animals in question or the species?

There are a range of options for placement of confiscated animals in captivity, including public and private facilities, either commercial or non-commercial, specialist societies and individuals. Where several options for placement exist, it may be helpful to consider which offers the opportunity to maximize the conservation value of the animals, such as involvement in a conservation education or research programme or a captive-breeding programme. The conservation potential must be carefully weighed against the risk of stimulating trade that could exert further pressure on the wild population of the species.

Although placement with a commercial captive-breeding operation has the potential to reduce demand for wild-caught animals, this option should be carefully assessed: it may be difficult to monitor these facilities, and such programmes may, unintentionally or intentionally, stimulate trade in wild animals. In many countries, there are active specialist societies or clubs of individuals with considerable expertise in the husbandry and breeding of individual species or groups of species. Such societies can assist in finding homes for confiscated animals with individuals who have expertise in the husbandry of those species

When a choice must be made between several options, the paramount consideration should be which option can:

- 1) offer the opportunity for the animals to participate in a programme that may benefit the conservation of the species;
- 2) provide the most consistent care; and
- 3) ensure the welfare of the animals.

In instances, where no facilities are available in the country in which animals are confiscated, transfer to a captive facility outside the country of confiscation may be possible. Whether to pursue this will depend on the conservation value of the species or the extent of interest in it. An important consideration in assessing this option is the cost involved and the extent to which these resources may be more effectively allocated to other conservation efforts.

The confiscating authorities should conclude an agreement to transfer confiscated animals to captive facilities. This agreement should set forth the terms and conditions of the transfer, including:

- a) restrictions on any use (e.g., exhibition, education, captive breeding), commercial or non-commercial, that the animals may be put to;
- b) a commitment to ensure life-time care or, in the event that this becomes impossible, transfer to another facility that can ensure life-time care, or to euthanize the animals; and
- c) conditions regarding subsequent transfer of ownership, including sale, of the animals or their offspring.
- **Q5 Answer:** Yes: Execute agreement and sell.
  - No: Proceed to Question 6.

### Question 6: Are institutions interested in animals for research under humane conditions?

Many research institutions maintain collections of exotic animals for research conducted under humane conditions. If these animals are kept in conditions that ensure their welfare, transfer to such institutions may provide an acceptable alternative to other options, such as transfer to another captive facility or euthanasia. As in the preceding instances, such transfer should be subject to terms and conditions agreed with the confiscating authority; in addition to those already suggested, it may be advisable to include terms that stipulate the types of research the confiscating authority considers permissible. If no placement is possible, the animals should be euthanized.

**Q6 Answer:** Yes: Execute Agreement and Transfer. No: Euthanize.

### **DECISION TREE ANALYSIS -- RETURN TO THE WILD**

# Question 2: Have animals been subjected to a comprehensive veterinary screening and quarantine?

Because of the risk of introducing disease to wild populations, confiscated animals that may be released must have a clean bill of health. The animals must be placed in quarantine to determine if they are disease-free before being considered for released.

**Q2 Answer:** Yes: Proceed to Question 3.

No: Quarantine and screen, and proceed to Question 3.

# Question 3: Have animals been found to be disease-free by comprehensive veterinary screening and quarantine, or can they be treated for any infection discovered?

If, during quarantine, the confiscated animals are found to harbour diseases that cannot reasonably be cured, unless any institutions are interested in the animals for research under humane conditions, they must be euthanized to prevent infection of other animals. If the animals are suspected to have come into contact with diseases for which screening is impossible, extended quarantine, donation to a research facility, or ethanasia must be considered.

**Q3 Answer:** Yes: Proceed to Question 4 No: If chronic and incurable infection exists, first offer animals to research institutions. If impossible to place in such institutions, euthanize.

# Question 4: Can the country of origin and site of capture be confirmed?

The geographical location from which confiscated animals have been removed from the wild must be determined if these individuals are to be used to re-inforce existing wild populations. As a general rule, animals should only be returned to the population from which they were taken, or from populations that are known to have natural exchange of individuals with this population.

If provenance of the animals is not known, release for reinforcement may lead to inadvertent hybridisation of distinct genetic races or sub-species. Related species of animals that may live in sympatry in the wild and never hybridise have been known to hybridise when held in captivity in multi-species groups. This type of generalisation of species recognition under abnormal conditions can result in behavioural problems, which can compromise the success of any future release and also pose a threat to wild populations by artificially destroying reproductive isolation that is behaviourally mediated.

**Q4 Answer:** Yes: Proceed to Question 5. No: Pursue 'Captive Options'.

Question 5: Do the animals exhibit behavioural abnormalities that might make them

unsuitable for return to the wild?

Behavioural abnormalities as a result of captivity can render animals unsuitable for release into the wild. A wide variety of behavioural traits and specific behavioural skills are necessary for survival, in the short-term for the individual, and in the long-term for the population. Skills for hunting, avoiding predators, food selectivity, etc. are necessary to ensure survival.

**Q5 Answer:** Yes: Pursue 'Captive Options'. No: Proceed to Question 6.

Question 6: Can the animals be returned expeditiously to their site of origin (specific location), and will benefits to conservation of the species outweigh any risks of such action?

Return of the animals to the wild through reinforcement of the wild population should follow the IUCN Re-introduction Guidelines (see Annex 4) and will only be an option under certain conditions, including:

- a) appropriate habitat for such an operation still exists in the specific location that the individual was removed from; and
- b) sufficient funds are available, or can be made available.

- **Q6 Answer**: Yes: Re-inforce at origin (specific location) following IUCN Guidelines. No: Proceed to Question 7.
- Question 7: For the species in question, does a generally recognized programme exist the aim of which is conservation of the species and eventual return to the wild of confiscated individuals and/or their progeny? *Contact IUCN/SSC, IIUDZG, Studbook Keeper, or Breeding Programme Coordinator (See Annex 3).*

In the case of species for which active captive breeding and/or re-introduction programmes exist, and for which further breeding stock/founders are required, confiscated animals should be transferred to such programmes after consultation with the appropriate scientific authorities. If the species in question is part of a captive breeding programme, but the taxon (sub-species or race) is not part of this programme, other methods of disposition must be considered. Particular attention should be paid to genetic screening to avoid jeopardizing captive breeding programmes through inadvertent hybridisation.

**Q7 Answer:** Yes: Execute agreement and transfer to existing programme. No: Proceed to Question 8.

# Question 8: Is there a need, and is it feasible to establish a new re-introduction programme *following IUCN Guidelines*?

IN CASES WHERE INDIVIDUALS CANNOT BE TRANSFERRED TO EXISTING RE-INTRODUCTION PROGRAMMES, RE-INTRODUCTION FOLLOWING IUCN GUIDELINES, MAY BE POSSIBLE, PROVIDING:

- a) appropriate habitat exists for such an operation;
- b) sufficient funds are available, or can be made available, to support a programme over the many years that (re)introduction will require; and
- c) sufficient numbers of animals are available so that re-introduction efforts are potentially viable.

In the majority of cases, at least one, if not all, of these requirements will fail to be met. In this instance, either conservation introductions outside the historical range of the species or other options for disposition of the animals must be considered.

If a particular species is confiscated with some frequency, consideration should be made as to whether to establish a re-introduction, reinforcement, or introduction programme for that species. Animals should not be held by the confiscating authority indefinitely while such programmes are planned, but should be transferred to a holding facility after consultation with the organization which is establishing the new programme.

**Q8 Answer:** Yes: Execute agreement and transfer to holding facility or new programme. No: Pursue 'Captive Options'.

## **Relevant Documents**

CITES. 1997. Resolution Conf. 10.7: Disposal of Confiscated Live Specimens of Species Included in the Appendices. Adopted at the Tenth Meeting of the Conference of the Parties to the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species of Wild Fauna and Flora (Harare, 1997).

(Available from CITES Secretariat or from http://www.wcmc.org.uk/CITES/)

- IUCN. 1987. The IUCN position statement on translocation of living organisms: introductions, re-introductions and restocking. IUCN, Gland, Switzerland. (Available from IUCN/SSC or from http://iucn.org/themes/ssc/PUBS/POLICY/INDEX.HTM)
- IUCN. 1998. IUCN Guidelines for Re-introductions. Prepared by the IUCN/SSC Reintroductions Specialist Group. IUCN, Gland Switzerland and Cambridge, UK. (Available from IUCN Publications Services Unit or from http://iucn.org./themes/ssc/PUBS/POLICY/INDEX.HTM)
- IUCN. In prep. IUCN Guidelines for the Prevention of Biodiversity Loss due to Biological Invasion. Prepared by the IUCN/SSC Invasive Species Specialist Group. IUCN, Gland, Switzerland.
- IUDZG/CBSG. 1993. The World Zoo Conservation Strategy. The Role of Zoos and Aquaria of the World in Global Conservation. IUDZG-the World Zoo Organization.

## Annexes Annex 1- Decision Tree for Captive Options



### Annex 2 - Decision Tree for Return to the Wild



## **Annex 3 - Key Contacts**

### **IUCN Species Survival Commission**

Contact:

Species Survival Programme IUCN-The World Conservation Union Rue Mauverney 28 1196 Gland Switzerland Tel: 41/22.999.0152 Fax: 41/22.999.00 15 Email: mail@hq.iucn.org Website: http://www.iucn.org/themes/ssc/index.htm

### **Taxonomic Specialist Groups**

Contact details for individual taxonomic specialist groups of SSC are available through IUCN at the contact details and IUCN website address provided above

### **Disciplinary Specialist Groups**

**Conservation Breeding Specialist Group** Dr Ulysses S. Seal, Chair IUCN/SSC CBSG Program Office

12101 JOHNNY CAKE RIDGE ROAD

APPLE VALLEY, MINNESOTA 55124

USA

TEL: 1/612.431.9325

FAX: 1/612.432.2757

E-MAIL: CBSG@EPX.CIS.UMN.EDU

WEBSITE: HTTP://WWW.CBSG.ORG

### **Veterinary Specialist Group**

William B. Karesh and Richard Kock, co-chairs

William B. Karesh, DVM Department Head Field Veterinary Program Wildlife Conservation Society 2300 Southern Boulevard Bronx, NY, 10460 USA Phone: 718-220-5892 Fax: 718-220-7126 email: <u>wkaresh@wcs.org</u> Dr. Richard Kock TA Wildlife PACE Epidemiology Unit OAU IBAR POB 30786 251517, 318877/890/892, 240591 Fax: 226651 332046 226565 email: Richard.kock@oau-ibar.org

#### **Invasive Species Specialist Group**

Dr. Mick Clout, Chair Dr Maj De Poorter, Programme Officer School of Environmental & Marine Sciences University of Auckland, Tamaki Campus Private Bag 92019 Auckland New Zealand Tel: 64/9.373.7599 Fax: 64/9.373.7042 E-mail: m.depoorter@auckland.ac.nz

#### **Re-introductions Specialist Group**

Dr Frederic Launay, Chair Mr. Pritpal Soorae, Programme Officer Environmental Research & Wildlife Development Agency (ERWDA) PO Box 45553 Abu Dhabi United Arab Emirates (UAE) Tel: 971-2-693-4650 Fax: 971-2-681-7361 E-mail: PSoorae@erwda.gov.ae

### **CITES Secretariat**

15, chemin des Anémones 1219 Châtelaine-Genève Switzerland Tel: 41/22.979.9139/40 Fax: 41/22.797.3417 Email: cites@unep.ch Website: www.wcmc.org.uk/CITES/